

Е.С. Татищева

УПРАЖНЕНИЯ, ЗАДАНИЯ: КЛЮЧИ К УЧЕБНИКУ

**«ПРАКТИЧЕСКИЙ КУРС
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА»**
под редакцией В.Д. Аракина

2
курс

Москва



2005

УДК 811.111(076.2)
ББК 81.2 Англ-923
Т23

Татищева Е.С.

Т23 Упражнения, задания: ключи к учебнику «Практический курс английского языка. 2 курс» под редакцией В.Д. Аракина/Е.С. Татищева. — М. : Гуманитар. изд. центр ВЛАДОС, 2005. — 197 с.

ISBN 5-691-01371-8.

Агентство СІР РГБ.

В пособии представлены ключи ко всем упражнениям учебника, кроме творческих заданий. Во многих случаях переводы как с русского языка на английский, так и с английского на русский даны в нескольких возможных вариантах.

Пособие предназначено для студентов и преподавателей филологических факультетов. Оно будет полезно всем, изучающим английский язык.

УДК 811.111(076.2)

ББК 81.2 Англ-923

- © Татищева Е.С., 2004
- © ООО «Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС», 2004
- © Серийное оформление обложки. ООО «Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС», 2004
- © Макет. ООО «Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС», 2004

ISBN 5-691-01371-8

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

В пособии содержатся ключи практически ко всем грамматическим упражнениям и ко всем упражнениям из основной части учебника английского языка под редакцией В.Д. Аракина.

Владение данными ключами избавит вас от необходимости «перерывать» словари и терзаться сомнениями: правильно ли я перевел текст или нет? Конечно, обратиться к данному пособию следует лишь после того, как будут самостоятельно сделаны упражнения. Ключ — это не шпаргалка, а всего лишь хороший способ проверить себя самого до того, как сдать домашнюю работу преподавателю.

Все полезные замечания и предложения, которые вы пришлете в издательство, будут учтены в следующих изданиях.

Успехов вам в учебе!

Автор

ESSENTIAL COURSE

UNIT ONE

Ex. I, p. 8

1. If the boy were hungry, I would/should give him something to eat. 2. If the supper were ready, we should/would sit down to table. 3. If I got a good mark for my composition, I would/should be happy. 4. If Mary had more free time, she would read more. 5. If the weather changed, we would/should go boating. 6. If I had no opportunity to see him, I would/should be very sorry. 7. If it didn't rain, I wouldn't/shouldn't have to take my umbrella with me. 8. If she finished everything on Friday, she wouldn't have to work on Saturday. 9. If you caught a cold, you would have to stay at home. 10. If the child didn't do what I told him, I would/should have to punish him.

Ex. III, p. 9

1. The students liked the idea of working in the lab twice a week. 2. We liked the idea of visiting our sick friend. 3. The children liked the idea of going on an excursion. 4. We didn't like the idea of staying indoors all day long. 5. Don't you like the idea of going to the theatre tonight? 6. All of us liked the idea of arranging a party at our University. 8. We liked the idea of going to the cinema after the lessons.

Ex. IV, p. 9

1. If I weren't tired, I would walk about/around (go and look about/around) the city. 2. We wouldn't go to this performance tomorrow if it weren't the first night. 3. If I didn't live so far, I would visit you more often. 4. If he spoke louder, the audience would listen to him with more interest. 5. If she had a bad memory, she wouldn't be able to memorize so many figures at a time. 6. I would like the idea of going to the Crimea/ I wouldn't mind going to the Crimea if it weren't so hot there now. 7. We all liked his idea of meeting at the beginning of the academic year.

Ex. III, p. 19

grow — grew, grown

creep — crept, crept — ползти, тайком пробираться

bear — bore, born — терпеть, выносить

break — broke, broken

keep — kept, kept

think — thought, thought

leap — leapt, leapt [lept]/leaped, leaped — прыгать

mean — meant, meant [ment]

fall — fell, fallen

find — found, found

feel — felt, felt

say — said, said

cling — clung, clung — прижиматься

hear — heard, heard

meet — met, met

run — ran, run

show — showed, shown

differ — differed, differing

prefer — preferred, preferring

murmur — murmured, murmuring

appear — appeared, appearing

occur — occurred, occurring

recover — recovered, recovering

remember — remember, remembering

chatter — chattered, chattering — болтать, вести пустой разговор; трещать, тараторить; стучать

refer — referred, referring

stir — stirred, stirring

water — watered, watering — 1. поливать; 2. слезиться

fear — feared, fearing

offer — offered, offering

drag — dragged, dragging — тащить (волоком), волочить

wag — wagged, wagging — вилять (хвостом)

plan — planned, planning

chat — chatted, chatting — болтать, непринужденно беседовать, говорить о том о сем

slip — slipped, slipping

beg — begged, begging

Ex. IV, p. 20

dependence	acceptance
independence	resemblance
difference	attendance
indifference	performance
existence	
insistence	
occurrence	

Ex. V, p. 20

The suffixes **-ed** and **-y** are used to form adjectives.

- a) **Freckled** is derived from **freckle** and means *веснучатый*.
Nosed is derived from **nose** and means *носатый*. It is also widely used in compounds: **long-nosed** — *длинноносый*; **snub-nosed** — *курносый*; **aquiline-nosed** — *имеющий нос с горбинкой*; **hook-nosed** — *крюконосый*; **red-nosed** — *красноносый*; **hard-nosed** — *(US) сузубо практичный, реалистичный, etc.*

Haired is derived from **hair** and means *волосатый, покрытый волосами*. It is widely used in compounds meaning *имеющий такие-то волосы*: **long-haired** — *длинноволосый*; **dark-haired** — *темноволосый*; **fair-haired** — *светловолосый*, **red-haired** — *рыжий, etc.*

Winged is derived from **wing** and means *крылатый, имеющий крылья (winged words — крылатые слова)*. It can be used to form compounds: **white-winged** — *белокрылый, etc.*

Horned is derived from **horn** and means *рогатый*. It can also be used to form compounds: **long-horned** — *длиннорогий, etc.*

Bearded is derived from **beard** and means *бородатый*. It can be used to form compounds too: **black-bearded** — *чернобородый, etc.*

Feathered is derived from **feather** and means *пернатый, оперенный, украшенный перьями*. It can also be part of compounds: **long-feathered**, **bright-feathered**, etc.

- b) **watery (water)** — 1. водянистый; 2. бледный, бесцветный; 3. слезящийся
skinny (skin) — тощий, «кожа да кости»
grassy (grass) — травянистый, поросший травой
silky (silk) — шелковистый
bony (bone) — костлявый, костистый
branchy (branch) — ветвистый

wavy (wave) — волнистый

stony (stone) — 1. каменистый; 2. каменный, безжалостный, холодный (stony heart — каменное сердце)

Ex. VIII, p. 21

inconvenient, inconvenience; discomfort, uncomfortable; independent, independence; indifferent, indifference; unable, incapable; unimportant; inexperienced/unexperienced; disobedient; misunderstanding (недоразумение); dishonesty

Ex. IXa, p. 21

Can you remember your first day at school? It was probably rather confusing. I am sure you ran after your mother thinking she was deserting you. When the child goes to school on his first day, he has to watch his mother leaving. The teacher must convince him that at the end of the day his mother and home will still be there. It is difficult to make the newcomer join in a game or a walk. A new life, completely different from what he is used to begins.

The mothers are as upset as their children. They hang on with their eyes fixed on their children and dislike leaving them to their fate.

The best way to deal with the situation is to get the child used to the idea of school, to help him in every way. Much depends on the parents. At the beginning of the term the mother should take her child to see the teacher and to look about/around/round the school. The first day should be something to look forward to and not to be feared.

Ex. X, p. 22

I. I looked (up, down) at the opposite house but saw no lights in its windows. — Я посмотрел (вверх, вниз) на дом напротив, но не увидел в его окнах ни единого огонька.

He looked at me but didn't recognize me. — Он посмотрел на меня, но не узнал.

He stared at me as if I had asked him to do something impossible. — Он уставился на меня так, словно я попросил его совершить что-то невыполнимое.

He stared at the fire, deep in thought. — Погруженный в свои мысли, он безучастно смотрел на огонь.

He's very fond of this picture, he can gaze at it for hours. — Он очень любит эту картину и может смотреть на нее часами.

The lovers stood with their hands clasped, gazing into each other's eyes. — Влюбленные стояли, взявшись за руки и глядя в глаза друг друга.

I looked about but saw no people anywhere. — Я огляделся но нигде не увидел ни одного человека.

Look ahead! — Смотри вперед!

Look out! — Берегись!/Осторожно!

Look through those documents, please. — Просмотри, пожалуйста, те документы.

I'll look after the child. — Я присмотрю за ребенком.

Don't forget to look after the flowers when I'm away. — Не забывай ухаживать за цветами, пока я буду в отъезде.

I've been looking for you since the very morning. — Я разыскиваю тебя с самого утра.

John looked forward to seeing Mario and his wife. — Джон предвкушал встречу/с нетерпением ожидал встречи с Марио и его женой.

Students always look forward to their holidays. — Студенты всегда с нетерпением ждут каникул.

Look here, would't it be better to stay indoors in such nasty weather? — Послушай, может, в такую мерзкую погоду лучше посидеть дома?

He looks sad. — У него печальный вид.

The child looks ill/well. — Ребенок выглядит больным/здоровым.

She looks like a real teacher. — Она похожа на настоящую учительницу.

It looks like rain. — Похоже, будет дождь./Кажется, дождь собирается.

Note:

He looks young for his age. — Он выглядит молодо для своих лет.

She looks beautiful in this dress. — В этом платье она выглядит красавицей.

She looks a child. — Она выглядит ребенком.

She seems (to be) clever. — Она кажется умной./Похоже, она умна.

This village seems (to be) quite small now. — Теперь эта деревушка кажется совсем маленькой.

He seems (to be) well educated. — Похоже, он хорошо образован.

There was something strange in his look. — В его взгляде было что-то странное.

Lanny returned the man's stare but didn't utter a word. — Ленни ответил ему таким же пристальным взглядом, но не произнес ни слова.

The girl blushed when she noticed the stranger's fixed gaze. — Заметив пристальный взгляд незнакомца, девушка покраснела.

Have a look at this photo, do you recognize the man? — Посмотрите на фотографию: вы узнаете этого человека?

Note:

I don't know his point of view on/views on/ idea(s) of/opinion of this subject. — Мне неизвестна(-ы) его точка зрения /взгляды/мнение по этому вопросу.

A look of pleasure came to her face. — На ее лице появилось довольное выражение.

There was an angry look in her eyes. — В ее глазах читался гнев.

2. The two brothers differ in their tastes. — У этих двух братьев разные вкусы.

His plan differs from all the others. — Его план отличается от всех остальных.

I differ from/with you in this matter. — По этому вопросу я с вами не согласен.

He is quite different from what I thought him to be. — Он совсем не такой, как я думал.

I want a different kind of book this time. — На этот раз мне бы хотелось книгу другого рода.

But: I prefer books of a different kind. — Я предпочитаю книги другого рода.

Our views on life are different. — У нас разные взгляды на жизнь.

Our tastes are alike. — Наши вкусы похожи.

A department store sells many different things. — В универмагах продается множество различных товаров.

Every day our students get different written assignments. — Каждый день наши студенты получают различные письменные задания.

The difference between our views is not very great. — Различие между нашими взглядами не так уж и велико.

I don't find much difference in the styles of these writers. — Я не вижу большой разницы в стилях этих писателей.

It won't make much difference whether we do it today or tomorrow. — Сегодня мы это сделаем или завтра — разница небольшая.

You may stay or leave, it makes no difference to me. — Хочешь, оставайся, хочешь, уезжай — мне все равно.

3. He rested for an hour before going on with his work. — Перед тем как продолжить работу, он часок отдохнул.

She likes to rest after dinner. — Она любит полежать /спокойно отдохнуть после обеда.

They stopped to rest their horses. — Они остановились, чтобы дать отдых лошадям.

The roof rests on eight columns. — Крыша опирается на восемь колонн.

There is always a cloud resting at the top of this mountain. — Вершина этой горы всегда окутана облаком.

Her fingers touched his forehead and rested there. — Она приложила пальцы к его лбу. /Ее пальцы коснулись его лба и задержались там.

She sat with her elbows resting on the table. — Она сидела, положив локти на стол.

Rest is necessary after work. — После работы необходим отдых.

I had a good night's rest. — Ночью я хорошо спал.

We had several rests on our way up the mountains. — Поднимаясь в горы, мы сделали несколько остановок, чтобы передохнуть.

4. Have you written all the exercises? — No, only half of them. The rest (of the exercises) may be done orally. — Ты сделал все упражнения? — Нет, только половину. Остальные можно сделать устно.

Only five of us were present at the lesson. The rest (of the group) went to the meeting. — Только пятеро из нас присутствовали на уроке. Остальные пошли на собрание. /Остальная часть группы пошла на собрание.

I'll take an apple and you may take the rest. — Я возьму яблоко, а ты можешь взять все остальное.

5. a comfortable chair, room, bed, house — удобный стул, уютная комната, удобная кровать, уютный/удобный/комфортабельный дом

I'm sure, you'll be very comfortable there. — Уверен, там вам будет очень удобно.

comfortable words — утешительные слова

Mr. Murdoch made himself comfortable in a chair and ordered a strong black coffee. — Мистер Мэрдок устроился поудобнее на стуле и заказал крепкий черный кофе.

The news brought comfort to all of us. — Эта новость была для всех нас утешением.

He was a great comfort to his parents. — Он очень поддерживал своих родителей.

Note:

convenient time, method tool, place — удобное(-ый) время, способ, инструмент, место

Will this bus be convenient to/for you? — Этот автобус тебе подойдет?

Let's arrange a convenient time and place for the conference. — Давайте договоримся об удобном месте и времени для проведения конференции.

at your earliest convenience — как только вы сможете; как можно скорее (*преим. офиц.*)

The house has all modern conveniences. — В доме есть все удобства.

6. I ran all the way for fear of being late. — Я бежал всю дорогу, потому что боялся опоздать.

As soon as we fired, the enemy ran. — Как только мы начали стрелять, враг обратился в бегство.

Trams run on rails. — Трамваи ходят по рельсам.

Motor cars run along ordinary roads. — Легковые автомобили ездят по обычным дорогам.

The buses run every five minutes. — Автобусы ходят/курсируют каждые пять минут.

Torrents of water ran down the street. — По улице бежали потоки воды.

Rivers run into the sea. — Реки впадают в моря.

Don't you hear the water running in the kitchen? — Неужели ты не слышишь, как в кухне льется из крана вода?

If you have a bad cold, your nose runs. — При сильной простуде течет из носа.

For several miles the road ran across a plain. — Несколько миль дорога шла по равнине.

Note:

The forest stretched to the south for many miles. — Лес простирался на юг на много миль.

So the story runs. — Так говорится в рассказе./Так рассказывают.

The story runs... — Рассказывают...

Our car ran into the bus. — Наша машина врезалась в автобус.

I ran into a friend of mine on my way home. — По дороге домой я случайно встретился с другом.

The other day I ran across a very interesting article in the newspaper. — На днях я натолкнулся в газете на очень интересную статью.

But for the skill of the driver the man would have been run over by the bus. — Если бы не умелые действия водителя, он попал бы под колеса автобуса.

7. I couldn't join (together) the two halves of the vase, because a small piece was missing. — Я не мог сложить две половинки вазы вместе, потому что не хватало маленького кусочка.

Where do the two streams join (each other)? — Где сливаются эти два потока?

Note:

The island was joined to the mainland with a bridge. — Остров соединялся с материком мостом.

We united all our forces to drive the enemy out of the country. — Мы объединили все наши силы, чтобы изгнать врага с территории нашей страны.

Workers of the world, unite! — Пролетарии всех стран, соединяйтесь!

The United Nations Organization (UNO) was formed in 1945 in San Francisco. — Организация Объединенных Наций была создана в Сан-Франциско в 1945 году.

Will you join me in my walk? — Ты не погуляешь со мной?
We'll join you in a few minutes. — Мы присоединимся к тебе через несколько минут.

If I were you, I should join this club. — На твоём месте я вступил бы в члены этого клуба.

He was twenty-two when he joined the army. — Ему было двадцать два года, когда он пошел в армию.

8. We depend on newspapers for information about world events. — О том, что происходит в мире, мы узнаем из газет.

He depends on his sister for a living. — Он живет за счет своей сестры.

You can depend upon the man. — На этого человека можно положиться.

I depend on you to do it. — Я рассчитываю, что ты это сделаешь.

Can I depend on this time-table or is it an old one? — Этому расписанию можно верить или оно устарело?

Will you finish your work on time? — It depends. — Ты закончишь работу в назначенный срок? — Смотря по обстоятельствам./Как получится.

Ex. XI, p. 22

1. It's impolite to stare at people like that. 2. A big crowd stood on the pavement staring at a broken car. 3. No wonder people stand gazing at this picture for hours: it's beautiful. 4. The little boys stood staring at each other ready to start a fight. 5. Look at her: again she is staring out of the window with that strange expression of hers. 6. When I looked at her eyes, I guessed that she had cried. 7. The Greek myth runs that Narcissus stared/gazed at his own reflection in the water until he fell in love with it. 8. He stood gazing around as if he tried to impress on his memory everything he saw.

Ex. XII, p. 22

a) 1. The weather seems quite warm though it's only 5 °C above zero. 2. The children look tired, but they seem greatly pleased with the trip, don't they? 3. The host and the hostess look a bit old-fashioned, but they seem to be hospitable and friendly. 4. She seems to be very light-minded, but she only looks it, in fact she is a very serious and hard-working student. 5. My brother says that people usually look what they are and I believe that people are very often quite different from what they seem to be.

b) 1. The teacher tried to explain the rule in a different way and I understood it at once. 2. The schoolboy returned the book he had read and asked for another book, but of a different kind, he said, as he wanted to have a rest from detective stories. 3. I asked for a pair of shoes of a different kind, but the shop-girl said that the rest of the shoes were not my size.

c) 1. A small stream runs along the road. 2. These steppes stretch to the south for miles and miles. 3. The path ran across the field for a mile and then was lost in the forest. 4. No matter how hard I looked, I saw only a vast plain stretching before me. 5. The ugly scar ran right across the man's left cheek. 6. For how many kilometres does this forest stretch?

d) 1. I like to sleep on a camp-bed, I find it very comfortable. 2. I believe Friday the only convenient day for our meeting, we have only four lectures on that day. 3. Though the flat was rather comfortable, warm, light and cosy, it was not convenient for our work as it was rather small. 4. These shoes are very convenient for wear in wet weather as they have rubber soles.

e) 1. The two streams join at the foot of the mountain. 2. United we stand, divided we fall. 3. One by one the children joined in the game. 4. The partisans' detachment joined the regular army and the enemy lost the battle against their joint/united forces. 5. All peace-loving people should unite in their struggle against a new war. 6. Won't you join me in a walk?

Ex. XIII, p. 23

1. It makes no difference. 2. Rivers run into the sea. 3. You can't depend on him. 4. Make yourself comfortable. 5. French is

different from English in having far more verbal inflexions. 6. He looks ill. 7. Join these points with a line. 8. This street runs east and west. 9. He refused to depend on his parents (for a living). 10. I differ from/with you. 11. I'll run the car into the garage. 12. Will you join us? 13. I ran across/into him in London last week. 14. Look here, Tom! 15. This tool is convenient. 16. These are different people with the same name. 17. Why does Jane keep silent?

Ex. XIV, p. 23

1. Он оглядел комнату и заметил открытую шкатулку с драгоценностями, которую кто-то беспечно оставил на столе. 2. Было что-то странное в ее резком переходе от вчерашнего напряженного ожидания к сегодняшнему безразличию. 3. В единстве наша сила. 4. Отец напомнил мне, что я нахожусь на его полном иждивении/в полной зависимости от него. 5. Ему пришлось столкнуться со множеством людей, принадлежащих к другому миру, и они, пожалуй, вызвали у него восхищение и зависть. 6. Я все время действую под влиянием момента/импульсивно, что доставляет неудобства и мне, и другим. 7. Он чувствовал себя неуютно из-за того, что ему приходится менять планы и придумывать что-то новое. 8. Он сердился на Нору из-за того, что та не захотела оставить все как есть.

Ex. XIX, p. 25

...There are no children — there are just human beings with a different scale of notions, a different stock of experience, different interests and a different play of feelings. Remember that we don't know them...

All contemporary upbringing of children is aimed at making the child convenient for the adults. Consistently, step by step it strives to lull, to suppress, to wipe out all that makes up the child's will, his freedom, his fortitude and the strength of his demands.

If the child is polite, obedient, sweet and convenient to you, you often give no thought to his becoming a spineless loser in the future...

Have you ever noticed how often you hear your child say, "Shall I open it?" when there is a ring at the door?

In the first place the lock on the entrance door is difficult to cope with, secondly there is a feeling that there, on the other side of the door/beyond the door a grown-up is standing who cannot

manage on his own and is waiting for you, little though you are to help...

Such are the small victories celebrated by a child who is already dreaming of long travels to distant lands. In his dream he is a Robinson Crusoe on a desert island whereas in reality he is beside himself with joy even when he is just allowed to look out of the window.

Ex. XXI, p. 25

1. I looked about and saw that there wasn't a single wooden house left in the village. 2. The old doctor remained the same kind, sincere man that we had known since we were children (since/ from childhood). 3. There is at least a month to go/a month left before we leave, but we are already looking forward to our holiday and making different plans for the summer. 4. Let me know if you decide to stay with your aunt for the rest of the vacations. I'll join you then. 5. The only way out left is to ask/There is nothing for it but to ask/There is nothing to be done but to ask this old woman to look after the children. 6. "Look here, I'll sweep the floor and wash up/wash the dishes and you'll do the rest, OK?" — "OK /It's a deal!/Deal!" 7. A few players stayed on the volley-ball pitch, and the rest went to the swimming-pool for a swim. 8. Are you looking for your overcoat? It has been left in the garden. Let me fetch it.

Ex. I, p. 31

- a) machines [mə'ʃi:nz]
 appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieɪt]
 humanity [hju:'mænɪti]
 vital [vaɪtl]
 challenge [ˈtʃælɪndʒ]
 individual [ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl]
 awareness [ə'weənɪs]
 ignorance [ˈɪgnərəns]
 fearful [ˈfiəf(ə)l]
 boredom [ˈbɔ:dəm]
 medium [ˈmi:diəm]
 accept [ək'sept]
 routine [ru:'ti:n]
 stimulating [ˈstɪmjuleɪtɪŋ]
 variety [və'raɪəti]

- to think privately — to think to oneself
 the most vital job — the most important job
 a rewarding job — a job that gives satisfaction (but perhaps not much money)
 a challenge to your character — something that puts your character to the test
 an ignorant teacher — a teacher lacking knowledge or education
 a guardian — 1. someone who guards or protects (блюститель, защитник, хранитель); 2. a person who has the legal responsibility of looking after a child that is not their own, especially after the parents' death (опекун)
 the same routine — the same fixed and regular way of working or doing things
 stimulating work — work that is pleasant because it suggests or encourages new ideas or ways of thinking
 to go in for teaching — to take up teaching, to become a teacher

Ex. II, p. 31

- a) to make/take a choice, to have a vocation for smth./to be good at smth., to be interested in smth., to consider teaching as a career, to appreciate, to be devoted to one's work, to serve humanity, a burning desire to know, respect for smb.;
 b) to be good at smth., actually, since/as, devoted, admit, rewarding, genuinely, awareness, to destroy.

Ex. VII, p. 33

1. When he was young/In his youth, he studied chemistry at university. 2. Children learn foreign languages easily. 3. I was very upset when I learned that I hadn't passed the exam. 4. He studied/was studying in his room all/the whole evening. 5. Study this information very carefully: it will help you to make the right choice. 6. My sister is studying to become a lawyer. 7. Unfortunately he never learned to read and write. 8. You are still to learn how to cope with difficult problems in class.

Ex. IX a), p. 34

Bob: What are you going to take up as a career?

John: Architecture. Actually, I've already started. I began my studies last October.

Bob: What are you going to do when you finish?

John: Oh, I shall go back home and ~~practice~~ in my native town. There's a lot of useful work to be done there — building schools, hospitals, homes for the people.

Bob: What made you decide to take up architecture as a career?

John: Well, I was good at Maths and Art at school and I think I had a certain feeling for design. My teacher encouraged me and said I had a bent for architecture.

Bob: I find that some young people fail to take up a career because they're not sure what they want to do and what career opportunities there are.

John: Yes, that's true. But usually your personal qualities show up at school, don't they? Teachers guide and encourage the young to take up the careers for which they're best suited.

Ex. XII, p. 35

1. His love for children made him take up teaching as a career/ become a teacher/go in for teaching and he never regretted/was sorry about his choice. 2. It looks like I'll have to choose between working in a day-care centre/kindergarten/nursery school and going to a teacher-training college. 3. There isn't much variety in my work, but it has its advantages/merits. 4. I am afraid that this time it will be difficult for the pupils/schoolchildren to cope with the task. 5. The pupils' progress depends to a great extent/degree (The pupils' progress largely depends) on their teacher and his professional skill. 6. Work in a school will be a challenge to your intelligence, tact and a sense of responsibility/will require from you intelligence, tact and a sense of responsibility. 7. Respect can be earned only by honest work. 8. In Britain not every graduate of a teacher-training college can find a job. 9. I have been working as a teacher/I've been in teaching for many years, and I can say that I couldn't find nobler work. 10. My friend chose medicine for a career when he was still at school. He has always been sure that it is the most vital work in the world. 11. My love of music and my interest in the theory of education made me consider/think about teaching music as a career. 12. School-leavers often have difficulty (in) deciding/find it difficult to decide (It is often difficult for school-leavers to decide) what trade/profession to choose. In this case the teachers and the parents can help them to make the right choice of university. Besides every school has a system of career

counselling. 13. In this country¹/In our country teaching has traditionally been one of the most respected professions. 14. What attracts you in teaching?

Ex. XV a), p. 37

Как я был школьным учителем: воспоминания и невзгоды

Стоит ли говорить, что родители учеников играют в жизни учителя не последнюю роль и именно их следует винить во многих его горестях и печалях. Каких только разновидностей родителей я не встречал! Наилучшая из них — это английский отец старой закалки, который приводя сына в школу, говорит тебе: «Если этот парень будет плохо себя вести, задайте ему хорошую трепку. Если он и тогда не исправится, дайте мне знать — я приеду и выдеру его сам. Ему положен шиллинг в неделю на карманные расходы, а если потратит больше, вы только дайте мне знать, и я вообще перекрою ему кран».

Жесткие слова, что и говорить, но именно такая речь пробуждает в душе учителя сильнейшее расположение к несчастному ребенку, и когда папаша напоследок бросает: «До свидания, Джек» и дитя дрожащим голоском отвечает: «До свидания, папа», учитель невольно проникается мыслью о том, что надо быть последним мерзавцем, чтобы обидеть маленького «страдальца, у которого такой отец».

Иное дело родитель современный, впитавший новомодные идеи. «В общем, я только что дал Джимми пять фунтов, — говорит он учителю тем же самым тоном, каким привык обращаться к какому-нибудь мелкому клерку у себя в конторе, — и объяснил, что, когда ему понадобится еще, нужно сказать вам сходить в банк и снять со счета столько, сколько ему требуется». После чего такой папаша начинает втолковывать тебе, что у Джимми-де самобытная натура и что обходиться с ним надо как нельзя более бережно и тактично. «Мы с женой, — говорит он, — пришли к выводу, что, когда он начинает капризничать/впадает в ярость, лучше сделать, как он хочет, и в скором времени он образумится».

¹The Russian word combination "в нашей стране" is often translated into English as "in this country", but this phrase can be used only when the speaker is on the territory of his country. If a Russian says "in this country" when he is in the USA, it will mean "in the USA".

В общем и целом из его слов следует, что Джимми можно лишь уговаривать, причем очень мягко, и ни в коем случае не принуждать к чрезмерным трудам.

Слушая такие речи, учитель, оскорбленный тем, что с ним обращаются как с какой-нибудь мелкой сошкой, впивается в распущенного сопляка Джимми взглядом василиска/хищным взглядом и думает про себя, что надо непременно попробовать взять его в ежовые рукавицы.

UNIT TWO

Ex I, p. 43

1. Mario wouldn't have come to England last year if John hadn't invited him. 2. Peter would have accepted your invitation if he hadn't been ill. 3. It wouldn't have been a hardship for the children to sweep and clean the rooms yesterday, would it? 4. If the weather had been fine, we should have gone to a holiday camp when we had our holiday. 5. We would have lived in a hotel in Sochi if the rates hadn't been very high. 6. It would have been natural if they hadn't met after their quarrel. 7. My friend and I would have gone to the cinema after that lesson if the rest of the students had agreed to go with us. 8. If the weather hadn't changed, we should have gone to the country yesterday evening.

Ex. II, p. 44

1. If the doctors that had treated Bob weren't very experienced, he wouldn't have recovered. 2. Mary wouldn't have passed the exams if she weren't so industrious. 3. We wouldn't have invited John Brown to our tea-party if we weren't acquainted with him. 4. I would have left the children alone if they weren't so naughty. 5. She would have agreed to teach us French if she knew the language well. 6. Martha wouldn't have understood the German delegates if she weren't German. 7. I wouldn't have given you this book if it were not interesting. 8. I wouldn't have advised my friends to have a walking tour if I weren't fond of walking tours myself.

Ex. IV, p. 44

1. Don't worry, the child wouldn't be so cheerful if he were seriously/gravely ill. 2. A beard and a moustache wouldn't become you, you would look much older than your age. 3. It would be better if they didn't allow the children to watch TV so late. 4. It would have been natural if the children had asked me about their new teacher, but no one asked this question. 5. If I were you, I would eat fewer sweets/less candy, you'll put on weight. 6. It would have been natural if he had become a scientist, he was good at the Exact Sciences at school, but he has become an actor. 7. You would have finished this translation long ago if you hadn't talked/chatted so much over/on the phone/by phone. 8. You wouldn't have forgotten to phone me if you weren't so absent-minded.

Ex. III, p. 56

- a) ache [eɪk] 1. *n* боль (*продолжительная, но не острая*);
 2. *v* болеть, ныть, ломить; чувствовать боль
 fever [ˈfi:və] 1. жар, высокая температура; 2. лихорадка
 medicine [ˈmeds(ə)n] 1. медицина; 2. лекарство (от — for)
 capsule [ˈkæpsju:l] капсула
 purgative [ˈpɜ:gətɪv] слабительное
 germ [dʒɜ:m] микроб, болезнетворная бактерия
 acid [æsɪd] 1. *n* кислота; 2. *adj* кислотный, кислый
 influenza [ˌɪnfluˈenzə] (*тж. разг. flu*) грипп
 various [ve(ə)riəs] 1. различный, разный; разнообразный;
 2. многие, разные (*только с множ. числом*)
 pneumonia [nju:ˈtævniə] воспаление легких, пневмония
 area [ˈe(ə)riə] 1. площадь (*страны, квартиры, треугольника и т. п.*), пространство, участок; 2. местность, район, зона; 3. сфера, область (*деятельности и т. п.*)
 pirate [ˈpaɪ(ə)rət] пират
 natural [ˈnætʃ(ə)rəl] естественный, натуральный
 bother [ˈbʊðə] 1. докучать, беспокоить; 2. беспокоить, волновать
 prescribe [prɪˈskraɪb] прописывать (*лекарство, мед. процедуру и т. п.*)
 bush [bʊʃ] куст
 brush [brʌʃ] 1. *n* щетка; кисть (*художника*); 2. *v* чистить щеткой

worry [ˈwʌrɪ, ˈwɜːrɪ] 1. *н* беспокойство, волнение, тревога, озабоченность; 2. *у* тревожить(ся), беспокоить(ся), волновать(ся)

thermometer [θəˈmɒmɪtə] термометр, градусник

absolutely [ˈæbsəluːtli] абсолютно, совершенно, совсем

relax [rɪˈlæks] 1. расслаблять(ся); 2. успокаиваться

b) shut — shut, shut, shutting

overcome — overcame, overcome, overcoming — преодоле-
вать

lie — lay, lain, lying — лежать

lie — lied, lied, lying — лгать

lay — laid, laid, laying — класть

wake — waked, waked; woke, woken, waking

freeze — froze, frozen, freezing

worry — worried, worried, worrying

die — died, died, dying

Ex. VI, p. 57

a) refuse — refusal

prescribe — prescription

pain — painful, painless

ache — headache, toothache, stomachache, earache, backache

condition — conditional, unconditional — безоговорочный

bare — barefoot(ed), barelegged, bareheaded, bareheaded, barely

like — likeness, alike, unlike

b) to read aloud — to read to oneself, to read silently

in good condition — in bad condition

at the foot of the bed — at the head of the bed

at the foot of the mountain/page — at the head/top of
the mountain/page

the girl had shoes on — the girl was barefoot

the seat is occupied — the seat is vacant/free

the trees are covered with leaves — the trees are bare

to be asleep — to be awake

c) голый — naked, bare

дрожать — to tremble, to shiver

отказаться — to refuse, to give up

Ex. VII, p. 57

a) — What hurts you?

— I can't say I feel any sharp pain in some definite place, I just ache all over.

— Does it hurt you to move your arms, legs or head?

— My head aches all the time, it hurts me to look at the light and each movement is painful.

— Well, I must examine you. Don't be afraid, it won't be painful.

— But doctor, each touch gives me pain.

— Well, try and take it easy.

b) — Your child's health is in a rather bad condition, he must be thoroughly examined in the polyclinic.

— But, doctor, he is in no condition to leave the house, he is too weak.

— Perhaps we'd better take him to hospital then.

— Oh, doctor, isn't it possible to keep him at home?

— Well, only on condition that you follow all my instructions.

c) 1. In spite of his father's wish he refused to leave the Medical Institute as he was fond of medicine and didn't want to give it up. 2. I decided to break with him after he had refused to help me when I was in great need of help. 3. Though she regularly refused his proposals, he couldn't give up his dream of marrying her sooner or later. 4. If she asks me for any favour, I'll never refuse her. 5. If I were you, I wouldn't give up my plan so easily.

d) 1. The children jumped and squealed like little puppies. 2. The girl tried to behave like a grown-up person. 3. She was invited to this conference as a specialist in medicine. 4. He works as a doctor in one of our hospitals. 5. You just listen to him, he speaks like a real doctor, though he doesn't know anything about medicine. 6. As your doctor, I don't allow you to get up for some more days.

Ex. X, p. 59

1. The clinical thermometer is a small thermometer for finding out the temperature of the body. 3. The boiling point of the Fahrenheit thermometer is 212°, of the Centigrade

thermometer — 100° and of the Reamur thermometer — 80°. 3. A kilometre is a measure of length as well as a mile and a foot; a kilogram and a pound are measures of weight. 4. His high temperature worried the boy because he didn't know the difference between Fahrenheit and Centigrade thermometers.

Ex. XII, p. 60

1. What conditions did you live under/in when you were a child? 2. I have put down all he said about it/all his remarks on this matter. 3. If you had taken these pills yesterday, you would be feeling much better today. 4. The girls looked miserable when they were told that their mother was ill. 5. Let the children run barefoot, it won't do them any harm. 6. All sick people are alike: they worry about small/little things (about trifles) and behave like children. 7. If I were you, I wouldn't write down this data, it is of no great importance. 8. If you stay awake, you will feel awful tomorrow. 9. I like this doctor because he doesn't prescribe too many medicines. 10. Is he absent again? It's just like him to miss lessons when we are having a test. 11. I wouldn't say that there was much likeness between us/that we were much alike. 12. It looks like rain. I think we had better stay at home.

Ex. XIII, p. 61

a) "Well, you'd better let me take your temperature," said Griffiths.

"It's quite unnecessary," answered Philip irritably.

"Come on."

Philip put the thermometer in his mouth. Griffiths sat at/by the side of the bed and chattered brightly for a moment, then he took it out and looked at it.

"Now, look here, old man, you stay in bed, and I'll bring old Deacon (round/around) to have a look at you."

"Nonsense," said Philip. "There's nothing the matter. I wish you wouldn't bother about me."

"But it isn't any bother. You've got a temperature and you must stay in bed. You will, won't you?"

"You've got a wonderful bedside manner," Philip murmured, closing his eyes with a smile.

b) 1. — Philip was not irritated at Griffith's advice, was he?

- Yes, he was. He said there was nothing the matter with him.
2. — Philip put the thermotmeter under his arm, didn't he?
— No, he didn't. He put it in his mouth.
3. — Philip's temperature wasn't all right, was it?
— No, it wasn't. It was high.
4. — Griffiths didn't even try to chatter sitting at his friend's bed, did he?
— But he did. He chattered brightly before taking the thermometer out.
5. — Philip thought that there was nothing the matter with him, didn't he?
— Yes, he did. At least that's what he said to Griffiths.
6. — There was really nothing the matter with Philip, wasn't there?
— But there was. Griffiths wanted to bring a doctor to have a look at him, so perhaps he suspected that Philip might have pneumonia.
7. — Griffiths didn't want Philip to stay in bed, did he?
— But he did. That's just what he told him to do.
8. — Philip didn't want his friend to look after him, did he?
— No, he didn't. He didn't want to bother him.
9. — Griffiths was going to bring a doctor to Philip, wasn't he?
— Yes, he was. He was worried about his friend's health.
10. — Philip smiled because he wanted his friend to think that he was all right, didn't he?
— No, he didn't. I think he smiled because he was glad that he had such a devoted friend./— Yes, he did. He wanted his friend to stop worrying.

Ex. XIV, p. 62

The mother was sitting by the child's bed, her eyes fixed on him. The child was lightheaded, he had a high fever, his cheeks were flushed, and there were dark areas/smudges/shadows under his eyes. A neighbour dropped in, she brought a thermometer and some medicine. She said that it would bring down the temperature. Two hours later the mother took the child's temperature and saw that the medicine hadn't worked.

The doctor came and said that the child had pneumonia, but there was no grave/serious danger yet. He asked when the boy had

fallen ill. The mother remembered that since Tuesday he had been aching all the time that he had a headache and was aching all over.

"Don't worry. Everything will be all right," the doctor said. "But you had better take the child to hospital."

"I'd rather look after him myself," said the mother.

"Well," said the doctor. "I won't insist. You needn't worry. If you follow my directions, I'm sure that in a few days he'll get better."

The doctor left, but he thought that it would have been better to take the child to hospital.

Ex. I, p. 71

in an unthinking moment — without thinking of the effect of what one is going to do

idly turn the leaves — lazily turn the pages

a fatal malady — a deadly/mortal/terminal illness, an illness causing death

premonitory symptoms — early symptoms giving warning that one is falling ill

complication — a new illness that happens during the course of another illness and makes treatment more difficult

to walk the hospitals — to observe and do practical work in hospitals, e. g. to examine patients, try to diagnose their diseases, cut up corpses, etc. (said of medical students)

to time the pulse — to count the number of heartbeats per minute by simultaneously feeling the pulse and looking at the second hand of a watch

all for nothing — without charging any fee, for free

the prescription ran — the prescription said

a family hotel — a hotel for families

to follow the directions — to follow the advice on what to do
his life was preserved — he survived

Ex. II, p. 71

b) *болезнь* — illness [ˈɪlnɪs], disease [dɪˈzi:z], malady [ˈmælədi], ailment [ˈeɪlmənt]

симптом — symptom [ˈsɪmptəm]

отчаяние — despair [dɪˈspeə]

тиф — 1. typhoid [ˈtaɪfɔɪd], typhoid fever [ˈtaɪfɔɪd ˈfi:və] (брюшной тиф); 2. typhus [ˈtaɪfəs], spotted fever [ˈspɒtɪd ˈfi:və] (сыпной тиф)

алфавит — alphabet ['ælfəbet]

дифтерит — diphtheria [dɪf 'θɪ(ə)rɪə], diphtheritis
[dɪfθə'raɪtɪs]

холера/cholera ['kɒlərə]

талия — waist [weɪst]

скарлатина — scarlet fever ['skærlɪt 'fi:və]

аптекарь — chemist ['kemɪst]

c) illness — disease, malady, ailment

friend — chum (pal, buddy — *not from the text*)

doctor — medical man

look quickly — glance

imagine — fancy

do a favour to smb. — oblige smb.

die — pass away

Ex. IV, p. 72

1. I am suffering from insomnia. 2. I am sneezing and coughing all the time. 3. I have a sore throat. 4. To crown it all/ On top of all/I've caught a cold. 5. I am short of breath. 6. Your lungs are all right. 7. Breathe in deeply through the nose. 8. You may have a nervous breakdown. 9. Have regular meals and keep to a diet of vegetables. 10. A tablespoonful three times a day. 11. I promise you full recovery within three months. 12. I will think it over. 13. I'm glad I've found you in. 14. I'm bursting with news. 15. None of them! 16. It had been bothering him for two days. 17. I was the only doctor in the surgery. 18. Poor thing! 19. Don't be silly. 20. I chose the easiest tooth to begin with. 21. And how did you get along? 22. I gave him a couple of injections/shots. 23. Perhaps I had better drop in..? 24. He will keep them (as souvenirs) to remember me by.

Ex. VII a), p. 73

He was taken to hospital and operated on/underwent an operation for appendicitis. — Его отвезли в больницу с приступом аппендицита и прооперировали.

After I've had some injections of tonic I feel quite cured of all my ailments. — После нескольких уколов тонизирующего препарата я, похоже, излечился от всех своих болячек.

The child is ill/laid up with chicken pox. He'll soon recover if no complications set in. — У ребенка ветрянки. Если не будет осложнений, он скоро поправится.

Smallpox is a catching disease marked by fever and small red spots on the body and often leaves permanent marks. — Оспа — это заразная болезнь, сопровождающаяся высокой температурой и появлением мелкой красной сыпи, от которой нередко остаются рубцы/неизгладимые отметины.

I've been on sick leave for a fortnight already, but I don't feel any better so far. — Я на больничном уже две недели, но мне пока не стало лучше.

The doctor diagnosed the illness as tuberculosis (t. b.). — Врач поставил диагноз: туберкулез./Врач определил, что у пациента туберкулез.

A doctor who performs/carries out operations is called a surgeon. Nowadays operations may be performed almost on any part of the body. — Врач, проводящий операции/осуществляющий оперативное вмешательство, называется хирургом. В настоящее время операции могут проводиться почти на любой части тела.

When people have pain in their teeth, they go to a dentist to have the holes in their teeth filled/stopped. When necessary, they may have their teeth taken/pulled out. — Когда у человека болят зубы, он идет к стоматологу, чтобы запломбировать их/поставить пломбы. Вслучае необходимости больные зубы можно удалить.

People who are treated in health centres/polyclinics are called out-patients, those who stay in hospital are called in-patients. — Пациенты, которых лечат в поликлиниках, называются амбулаторными больными, а пациенты, которых лечат в больницах, — стационарными.

Something is wrong with my legs: all my joints ache and when I bend my knee, it hurts me. — У меня что-то с ногами: все суставы ноют и больно сгибать колено.

The old man's sight is getting dim, his eyes are sore, swollen and itching. — У старика слабеет зрение, глаза у него воспалились, опухли и чешутся.

Ex. VIII a), p. 73

Scarlet fever is an infectious fever, marked by the appearance on the second day of a bright red rash consisting of closely-set red spots. Shortly after the patient develops a high temperature and suffers from painful sore throat. On the third or fourth day the rash starts to fade and in favourable cases the temperature

falls and the patient feels better. At the end of a week the rash usually disappears. Complete recovery may be expected within the following month. The complications of scarlet fever are very serious, the commonest being inflammation of the ear. Scarlet fever is essentially a disease of children and young persons.

Ex. XIII, p. 75

1. I must have caught (the) flu. 2. You had better consult a doctor. 3. The doctor felt my pulse, checked my heart and lungs and took my temperature. 4. She is in no condition to talk, she has got a terrible toothache. 5. I am shivering all over. I must have caught (a) cold. 6. I can't read aloud, I have a sore throat. 7. There is nothing to worry about, he has been successfully operated on/his operation has been a success. 8. I think I'll take these pills for headache. 9. Why are you bare-headed in such weather? You have been seriously/gravely ill lately. Complications may set in./You may have complications. 10. Have you been X-rayed? 11. Here is the prescription. Take a tablespoonful of the mixture three times a day. 12. Have you sent for the doctor? 13. You've got two bad teeth. You ought to/should go to a dentist. 14. The doctor asked the patient to strip to the waist and examined him. 15. Who will go to the chemist's to have the prescription/medicine made up? 16. If you hadn't followed the doctor's directions, you wouldn't have recovered so quickly. 17. If I were you, I would keep to/follow a diet because there is something wrong with your stomach. 18. What a pity that the doctor forgot to prescribe a medicine for my running nose. 19. Why are you short of breath? Do you have a high blood pressure or is there anything/something wrong with your heart? 20. The child has scarlet fever. He will have to stay in bed for ten days or so/for about ten days.

Ex. XIV, p. 77

The scrap of paper was a bill for Mr. Strelnikov's appendicitis operation/operation for appendicitis (for the operation Mr. Strelnikov had undergone for appendicitis). One of us happened to see such a document for the first time in his life, and it was very interesting for him to read it. It ran, "Blood test — \$25. Surgeon's fee — \$200. Anaesthesia — \$35. Day in hospital — \$200. TV — \$3 per day." Altogether/In total/All in all kissing his appendix goodbye/waving goodbye to his appendix/

getting rid of his appendix was to cost Mr. Strelnikov 1112 dollars. That included the doctor's fee for the diagnosis, the cost of taking out the stitch, etc.

If Mr. Strelnikov had wished to extend his stay in hospital to seven days, which is standard/normal for our/this country, the bill would have become twice as big/long. However, as a citizen of a country where medical care is free, he didn't have to pay for the operation out of his salary/out of his pocket. It was the state that paid for him. And he stayed in hospital as long as Americans do, that is three days.

Ex. XVII a), p. 77

1. В Англии первичным медицинским обслуживанием занимаются семейные врачи, работающие в системе Государственной службы здравоохранения. Оно включает услуги врачей, стоматологов, магазинов «Оптика» и аптек, выбираемых самим пациентом. Семейные врачи, работающие по договору с Государственной службой здравоохранения, имеют в среднем по 2250 пациентов. В случае болезни они ставят первоначальный диагноз и либо прописывают соответствующий курс лечения, либо направляют больного к более узким специалистам или на консультацию в больницу.

Многие больницы, работающие в системе Государственной службы здравоохранения, были построены в XIX веке, а некоторые, такие, например, как знаменитые больницы Св. Варфоломея и Св. Фомы, ведут свое происхождение от еще более ранних благотворительных учреждений.

Около 85% стоимости медицинских услуг оплачивается из налоговых поступлений, остальное покрывается за счет Государственной службы здравоохранения и тех денег, которые пациенты платят за рецепты, лечение и протезирование зубов и очки. Органы здравоохранения могут также собирать добровольные пожертвования.

2. Никто не станет утверждать, что Государственная служба здравоохранения Великобритании работает идеально. Многие врачи жалуются, что им приходится тратить уйму времени, заполняя бланки общенационального медицинского страхования, и что с таким огромным количеством пациентов им не хватает времени, чтобы пролечить хотя бы одного из них должным образом. А медсестры говорят, что им при-

ходится слишком много работать, а зарплата у них несоизмеримо низкая.

3. Многие больницы, работающие в системе Государственной службы здравоохранения, устарели и переполнены, а из-за недостатка коек больным приходится подолгу ждать операций. Богатые предпочитают обращаться к частнопрактикующим врачам или же к специалистам с Харли-стрит, знаменитой «врачебной» улицы в Лондоне. Когда такие люди болевают, они ложатся в частные клиники, пребывание в которых может стоить целых сто фунтов в неделю. Они также могут заплатить за отдельную палату в обычной больнице, что обойдется примерно в десять фунтов в день.

UNIT THREE

Ex. II, p. 85

1. Will it be **convenient for/to** everybody to have our meeting after the lessons? — I believe so, but I don't know if it will be **convenient for/to** our teacher. 2. Would it be **easy/difficult** for the second-year students to read English newspapers? — If you mean papers published in Britain, I think it would be **difficult** for them so far. 3. Which is more **important** for a student: to read or to speak English well? — If the student is going to become a teacher, it's equally **vital** for him or her both to read and speak well. 4. Do you think it would be **useful** for students with bad spelling to copy English texts? — It might be **helpful/good** for them, but to tell you the truth it's a very tiresome job. 5. Will it be **useful/good** for students to take part in the phonetic contest at our department? — Of course. It will be **excellent** for the first-year students as it will give them a good chance to brush up their pronunciation.

Ex. III, p. 85

1. It will be **easy** for her to make friends with children: they like the way she plays with them. 2. It would be **interesting** for me to take part in the excursion if I were younger. 3. I don't like

the way you read, you should give more attention to reading aloud.
 4. I think it's necessary for you to consult a doctor about your headache. 5. I don't like the way this nurse gives injections. 6. It will be interesting for the first-year students to learn about the history and traditions of our Institute.

Ex. III, p. 94

- a) grow — grew, grown, growing
 build — built, built, building
 attract — attracted, attracted, attracting
 send — sent, sent, sending
 display — displayed, displayed, displaying
 flow — flowed, flowed, flowing
 lie — lied, lied, lying (лгать)
 lie — lay, lain, lying (лежать)
 hurry — hurried, hurried, hurrying
 strike — struck, struck, striking
 puzzle — puzzled, puzzled, puzzling
- b) Celtic [ˈkeltɪk, ˈseltɪk]
 settlement [ˈsetlmənt]
 commerce [ˈkɒməs]
 finance [faɪˈnæns]
 explore [ɪkˈsplɔː]
 kilometre [ˈkɪləmi:tə]
 parliamentary [ˌpɑləˈment(ə)ri]
 magnificent [mæɡˈnɪfɪs(ə)nt]
 ceramics [sɪˈræmɪks]
 metalwork [ˈmetlɜːk]
 photography [fəˈtɒɡrəfi]
 atomic [əˈtɒmɪk]
 royal [ˈrɔɪəl]
 canal [kəˈnæl]
 sunbather [ˈsʌnbet̪ə]
 major [ˈmeɪdʒə]
 barrier [ˈbæriə]
 panorama [pəˈnɒrɑːmə]
 double-decker [ˌdʌb(ə)lˈdekə]
 disaster [dɪˈzɑːstə]

- c) narrow — narrower — narrowest
small — smaller — smallest
great — greater — greatest
old — older/elder — oldest/eldest
quiet — quieter/more quiet — quietest/most quiet
worthy — worthier — worthiest
busy — busier — busiest
easy — easier — easiest

Ex. IV, p. 94

- eat — uneatable, i. e. not fit to be eaten — несъедобный
read — unreadable, i. e. 1. difficult or impossible to read, especially because of extreme untidiness — неразборчивый; 2. too dull to be read; not worth reading — скучный, нечитабельный
break — unbreakable, i. e. impossible to break — неломкий, нехрупкий, небьющийся
forget — unforgettable, i. e. impossible to forget — незабываемый
pardon — unpardonable, i. e. that cannot be forgiven — непростительный
describe — undescribable (*also* indescribable), i. e. that cannot be described — неопиcуемый
desire — undesirable, i. e. unpleasant and unwanted — нежелательный
imagine — unimaginable, i. e. that cannot be imagined — невообразимый
believe — unbelievable, i. e. too improbable to be believed or very surprising — невероятный

Ex. IX, p. 96

a) 1. I won't be surprised if he gets a "five", he is a very bright boy. 2. We were struck by the contrasts between wealth and poverty in Delhi. 3. His question puzzled me. I didn't know how to answer it. 4. I was surprised to meet him in town. I was sure he had not come back yet. 5. His cruelty struck/astonished us. We had always thought that he was kind and sympathetic.

b) 1. Pick up the pieces of the broken cup and throw them out. 2. Give me a piece of paper. I'll show you how to make a boat for the child. 3. I'd like to take one more piece of cake. May I? 4. I never put more than two lumps of sugar into my tea. 5. I need a

short piece of string to tie the parcel with. 6. I'd like to have a slice of lemon with my tea.

c) 1. Red Square is a historic spot: many historic events took place in it. 2. In his historical novels Walter Scott gave a wonderful description not only of historical events, but of whole historical epochs. 3. The ninth of May is one of the most important historical dates: we celebrate our historic victory in World War II. 4. There are many historical monuments in Moscow.

Ex. XI a), p. 96

Please remember: traffic in Britain keeps to the left! So when crossing a street look right first, then left. If possible, cross over zebra crossings, sometimes indicated with flashing orange lights on either side of the road.

The speed limit in Britain is 70 mph (= miles per hour); in built-up areas 30 mph. Careful riding is essential as there are many narrow and winding roads.

Roads for fast long distance driving are called motorways. The best known is the motorway between London and Leeds. Road signs are mostly the same as those used on the continent. The same goes for traffic lights.

Ex. XII a), p. 97

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. — *Букв. пер.:* Одна птица в руке стоит двух в кустах. *Русск. экв.:* Лучше сидица в руке, чем журавль в небе.

The game is not worth the candle. — *Игра не стоит свеч.*

An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening. *Букв. пер.:* Один час утром стоит двух вечером. *Русск. экв.:* Утро вечера мудренее.

Between two evils 'tis not worth choosing. *Букв. пер.:* Нет смысла/Не стоит выбирать из двух зол. *Русск. экв.:* Хрен редьки не слаще.

Ex. XII, p. 97

1. It is not well worth taking a trip along the Thames today: the wind is too strong. 2. It is well worth taking/following his advice. 3. It isn't well worth spending your time on things you are not interested in. 4. It is well worth visiting the Science

Museum in London. 5. Just as Westminster often stands for Parliament of Great Britain, so the City is its financial centre. 6. Just as the Humanities/the Arts stand for history, literature and foreign languages, so the Sciences stand for physics, chemistry, botany, etc.

Ex. XV a), p. 98

Кроме важнейших новостей, публикуемых на первой полосе под аршинными заголовками/под заголовками, набранными крупным жирным шрифтом, в газете есть и множество других разделов. Некоторые читатели сразу же обращаются к страницам тематических объявлений, называемых так потому, что все они разбиты по темам, например «Сдается внаем», «Куплю», «Требуются»/«Работа» и т. п. Для тех, кто интересуется тем, что сейчас носят, существуют странички моды. Если вам хочется узнать, где что идет, какие и где проводятся выставки и т. п., можно посмотреть раздел «Афиша». Некоторым нравится просматривать всю газету, страница за страницей, то читая заголовки, то пробегая глазами какую-нибудь статью, то разглядывая политические карикатуры или знакомясь с теми или иными новостями бизнеса.

Ex. XVI, p. 98

1. The speaker spoke about the future of mankind. 2. This picture always attracts the visitors of the museum. 3. The inscription on the monument puzzled the tourists because/as none of them had come across Old English before. 4. We were surprised to learn that near Marble Arch in Hyde Park anyone can air their views on any subject. One may often hear a lot of nonsense there. 5. Here is the advertisement/ad you need. 6. Believe me, this young man is worthy of your respect. 7. Nowadays pounds and pence are in circulation in Britain. 8. 1945 is a historic year for all mankind. 9. Every British newspaper has its own readership/circle of readers. 10. London like any other capital/capital city with heavy traffic has its share of road/motoring/traffic accidents. 11. The Vorobiovy Hills give a striking panorama of Moscow. 12. The place is/The premises are heated with hot water circulating in pipes. 13. Hundreds of new houses grow up/spring up/appear in all the cities and towns of our/this country. 14. The visitors of this museum are attracted by its rich collection of fine and applied arts. 15. The exhibits in the History Museum display

the development of civilization on the territory of Russia.
16. The speed limit in Moscow's residential areas/districts is 60 km p. h. (kilometres per hour).

Ex. XVII, p. 100

After more than ten years of debating whether it is worth/well worth allowing television into the British Parliament, the Lords have at long last permitted the installation of TV cameras in their House. The Commons, however, won't pass a similar resolution. One of the main opponents of broadcasting/airing/televising the sessions of Parliament live/of putting the sessions of Parliament on the air is Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher. To justify her stance she claims that such broadcasts will cost too much. But according to the London correspondent of the American newspaper "Christian Science Monitor" the true reason for Mrs. Thatcher's stubborn resistance is her unwillingness to publicize/to bring to light the criticism of her government. Besides, as Lord Whitelaw has pointed out in a recent debate, another big problem is the fact that many MPs just doze off during the sessions. Showing the napping legislators on TV/Airing the napping legislators will surely not boost their popularity.

Ex. I, p. 109

mansion — a large and stately house

to live from hand to mouth — to have only just enough money

to live on and nothing for the future

miserable houses — poor unrepared houses

to line the streets — to form rows along the streets

dome — a rounded roof on a building

slums — a city area of old unrepared houses and poor living conditions

to come first — 1. to be the first to come; 2. to win a competition (*also* to come second, third, etc.); 3. to be more important to smb. than anything else, e. g. My family comes first, my work second)

the Crown Jewels — the crowns, jewels, swords, etc. worn by the monarch on important state occasions

statesman — a political or government leader, especially one who is respected as being wise, honest and disinterested

huge — 1. extremely large; 2. very great in degree

across the road — on the opposite side of the road, e. g. the house across the road = the house opposite
 the seat of the government — the building(s) where the government works; the seat of smth. — the place where smth. is or where a particular activity is carried on
 at the cost of smb's life — at the loss of smb's life, given to obtain or save smth. or smb.
 to face smth. — 1. to have or turn the face or front to smth. or in a certain direction; 2. to have to deal with (a problem or unpleasant situation), e. g. We are facing a bleak future if Father doesn't find a job; 3. to accept or to deal with (a problem, unpleasant situation, opponent, enemy, etc.) firmly, e. g. You'll have to face the facts: your grammar isn't good enough, and you will hardly be able to pass the exam
 shady avenues — broad streets with pavements protected from the sun by trees

Ex. II, p. 109

- a) mansion [ˈmæns(ə)n] большой особняк
 restaurant [ˈrest(ə)rənt] ресторан
 jewel [ˈdʒu:əl] драгоценность
 guard [gɑ:d] 1. *n* охрана; охранник, часовой; 2. *v* охранять
 halt [hɔ:lt] останавливать(ся)
 column [ˈkɒləm] 1. колонна; 2. колонка, столбец (*в газете*)
 ton [tʌn] тонна
 sovereign [ˈsɒvrɪn] 1. *n* суверен; 2. *adj* суверенный
 national [ˈnæʃ(ə)nəl] национальный, государственный; народный, всенародный
 float [fləʊt] плавать; держаться на поверхности
 sculpture [ˈskʌlptʃə] скульптура, статуя
 swan [swɒn] лебедь
 weigh [weɪ] взвешивать(ся)
 conqueror [ˈkɒŋkəɹə] завоеватель
 specimen [ˈspesɪmɪn] образец, образчик

- b) ho'tel, 'ceremony, Re'naissanc/'Renaissance [rɪ'neɪs(ə)ns, renə'sɑ:ns], Tra'falgar 'Square, 'manuscript, 'avenue, 'architect, E'lizabeth, 'Senate

- c) build — rebuild — 1. строить заново, восстанавливать;
2. перестраивать
tell — retell — пересказывать
construct — reconstruct — 1. реконструировать, перестраивать; 2. восстанавливать, воссоздавать
arm — rearm — перевооружать
produce — reproduce — воспроизводить

Ex. VIII, p. 111

Scotland Yard is the headquarters of the Metropolitan Police of London. For most people its name immediately brings to mind the picture of a detective — cool, collected, efficient, ready to track down any criminal.

Scotland Yard is situated on the Thames Embankment close to the Houses of Parliament and the familiar clock tower of Big Ben. The name "Scotland Yard" originates from the plot of land adjoining Whitehall Palace where since about the 14th century the royalty and nobility of Scotland stayed when visiting the English Court. The popular nickname of the London policeman "bobby" is a tribute to Sir Robert Peel who introduced the police force in 1829 and whose Christian name attached itself to members of the force.

Ex. X, p. 112

1. In the very centre of the City opposite the Bank of England is the statue of Wellington, the famous English general and statesman of the 19th century. Under his command the British troops and their allies defeated Napoleon's army at Waterloo in 1815. Waterloo Bridge, one of the most beautiful bridges across/over the Thames was so named/named so in memory of this victory. 2. The Mall is a broad avenue, lined with trees/a broad, tree-lined avenue leading from Trafalgar Square to Buckingham Palace, the Royal residence. Opposite the Palace (there) stands a huge monument with a statue of Victory at its top. This monument was erected/set up in memory/in honour of Queen Victoria whose sixty-four-year reign (1837—1901) was the longest in history. 3. The Highgate Cemetery is famous for the grave of Karl Marx who was buried there. In 1956 a monument to Marx was erected/set up there funded/financed with the donations/contributions that had been sent by workers from all over the world.

Ex. XIV, p. 113

1. Out of/From/Through a taxi window you can only get/catch/obtain/have a glimpse of London. There are many other ways of seeing/doing its sights: one can walk around it, one can go on a two-hour/on two hours' (circular) tour in a tourist bus, one can see the city from the top of a double-decker/double-decker bus; besides, one can take a trip along the Thames or the Great Canal in Regent's Park. 2. If you could fly over Moscow in a helicopter, you could see how much our capital has changed and grown. Long streets, lined with trees cross the city in all directions, and blocks of new many-storeyed/multistorey houses (of highrises) have grown up/sprung up/appeared on its outskirts instead of small wooden houses, dark with soot and smoke. Huge cranes stand high above/over the numerous building sites of the capital. 3. The underground/subway is the most convenient city transport/form of transport. Hundreds of thousands of Muscovites and visitors go up and down its escalators (moving stairways/staircases) and admire the architecture and decoration of its wonderful underground/subterranean palaces. 4. The monument to Alexander Pushkin in Puskinskaya (now Strastnaya) Square is one of Muscovites' favourite monuments/favourites. At its foot one may/can always see bouquets of natural flowers, brought by Muscovites to honour the memory of their favourite/beloved poet.

Ex. XVI b), p. 116**Лондон утром**

В то утро, как это порой бывает, дым и поднимающийся над долиной Темзы туман решили сотворить для своего родного Лондона, и особенно для старейшей его части, Сити, несколько чудес. В такое утро Сити кажется волшебным местом. Все в нем окутано чуть светящейся дымкой, то серебристой, то тускло-золотой. Здания сохраняют свою форму, их можно пощупать — но они становятся невесомыми; они парят в воздухе подобно дворцам из сказок «Тысячи и одной ночи»; кажется, что можно опрокинуть купол собора Св. Павла одним прикосновением указательного пальца, подвинуть назад резиденцию лорд-мэра, подбросить в небо колонну, воздвигнутую в память о пожаре 1666 г. В такое утро старинные церкви невозможно сосчитать: их становится больше, чем когда-либо было. Транспорта на улицах не меньше обычного: алый поток

двухэтажных автобусов все так же катится по древним, узким улочкам; тротуары по-прежнему заполнены толпой банковских курьеров, мальчишек-посыльных, полицейских, клерков, машинисток, швейцаров, членов правления компаний, секретарш, жуликов, сплетников и сплетниц и просто праздношатающихся. Но в такое утро все эти автобусы, такси, автофургоны, грузовики, а также все пешеходы становятся как бы не вполне осязаемыми; они движутся словно под покровом тончайшего газа и все одеты в бархат; их голоса звучат приглушенно, а движутся они точно в замедленной съемке. Все чересчур новое, вульгарное и глупое неким таинственным образом растворяется в особенно густых клубах тумана. А все, что сохранилось от былой древней красоты, остается, причем в идеальном освещении и в идеальной оправе. Стоит завернуть за угол, как кто-нибудь прошепчет вам одну-две строки из Чосера. Если посмотреть в такое утро на Темзу, то глазам открывается и вовсе фантастическое зрелище: географии здесь больше нет, а есть одна лишь чистая поэзия; вода исчезает, и смутные силуэты из какого-то полного приключений сна скользят прямо по воздуху, мерцающему золотом и серебром. Вот каким бывает Сити в такое утро — это город из готической сказки, видение или мираж.

UNIT FOUR

Ex. I, p. 120

Pattern 1: 1. Our mother is hardly ever able to go to the theatre./Our mother hardly ever goes to the theatre. 2. Our students are hardly ever able to listen to native English speech. 3. She is hardly ever able to get herself a new dress. 4. They are hardly able to spend their holiday at the seaside. 5. He is hardly ever able to refuse helping his friends.

Pattern 3: 1. It will never do to stare at people. 2. The teacher said it would never do to hand in homework written carelessly./The teacher said that handing in work written carelessly would never do. 3. "I say, Turner, it will never do to treat your comrades/friends like that." 4. My mother said that it

- c) build — rebuild — 1. строить заново, восстанавливать;
2. перестраивать
tell — retell — пересказывать
construct — reconstruct — 1. реконструировать, перестраивать; 2. восстанавливать, воссоздавать
arm — rearm — перевооружать
produce — reproduce — воспроизводить

Ex. VIII, p. 111

Scotland Yard is the headquarters of the Metropolitan Police of London. For most people its name immediately brings to mind the picture of a detective — cool, collected, efficient, ready to track down any criminal.

Scotland Yard is situated on the Thames Embankment close to the Houses of Parliament and the familiar clock tower of Big Ben. The name "Scotland Yard" originates from the plot of land adjoining Whitehall Palace where since about the 14th century the royalty and nobility of Scotland stayed when visiting the English Court. The popular nickname of the London policeman "bobby" is a tribute to Sir Robert Peel who introduced the police force in 1829 and whose Christian name attached itself to members of the force.

Ex. X, p. 112

1. In the very centre of the City opposite the Bank of England is the statue of Wellington, the famous English general and statesman of the 19th century. Under his command the British troops and their allies defeated Napoleon's army at Waterloo in 1815. Waterloo Bridge, one of the most beautiful bridges across/over the Thames was so named/named so in memory of this victory. 2. The Mall is a broad avenue, lined with trees/a broad, tree-lined avenue leading from Trafalgar Square to Buckingham Palace, the Royal residence. Opposite the Palace (there) stands a huge monument with a statue of Victory at its top. This monument was erected/set up in memory/in honour of Queen Victoria whose sixty-four-year reign (1837—1901) was the longest in history. 3. The Highgate Cemetery is famous for the grave of Karl Marx who was buried there. In 1956 a monument to Marx was erected/set up there funded/financed with the donations/contributions that had been sent by workers from all over the world.

would never do to let her do all the work alone. 5. It will never do to hurt animals. 6. "You have come unprepared again. It will never do," said the teacher./"Coming unprepared will never do," said the teacher.

Ex. II, p. 120

1. She worked very little during the term and we all told her that she might fail at her examination. 2. It was hardly possible to let the boy stay at home alone because we all knew that he might make trouble if he did. 3. She worked too hard and her friends were afraid that she might fall ill. 4. The mother thought the boy might become a great pianist, and so she made him practise day and night. 5. We wanted to go and see our sick friend, but the doctor didn't allow that saying that we might catch the disease.

Ex. III, p. 121

1. It is dangerous to keep the windows open during a thunderstorm. 2. She kept the door closed and didn't let anyone in. 3. Put the lemonade in the refrigerator to keep it cold. 4. The epidemic was at its height, and all the doctors of the town were kept busy. 5. I put the tulips in the water to keep them fresh. 6. Keep your eyes open and your mouth shut. 7. This fur coat is sure to keep you warm in any frost. 8. What is the teacher to do to keep his pupils interested?

Ex. IV, p. 121

1. It will never do to hurt those who are younger than you. 2. We are hardly ever able to go to the country on our days off/at weekends. 3. I told you that you might fall ill if you got your feet wet. 4. Keep the patient awake until the doctor comes. 5. It will never do to use the phone for silly jokes. 6. Keep the children busy and don't let them make noise while I am talking on the phone. 7. On such a hot day the windows should be kept open. 8. It will never do to smoke so much, you will ruin your health. 9. John wrote to his friend that he might visit him the following year.

Ex. I, p. 130

A. 3. In reported speech one should say the mother, the father or his (her, etc.) mother, father, depending on the context, e. g. Jane said that her father was a lawyer.

But: "The story/The author says that at the end of the day there were tears in the mother's eyes." On the other hand if it is the members of one family who are talking, a brother can say to a sister, "Father says that Mother isn't going to cook dinner today."

B. 1. One can decorate

- a Christmas tree;
- a cake with icing;
- streets with flags, coloured lamps, etc.;
- room with flowers;
- a dress with embroidery.

To trim is to decorate, especially round the edges. One can trim

- a jacket with fur;
- a building with marble;
- a hat with flowers, ribbons, etc.;
- a hem with lace;
- a Christmas tree.

2. The preposition on is used before the names of days and the parts of day when they are used with descriptive attributes.

N.B. You can say both **on that day (morning, etc.)** and **that day (morning, etc.)**, and **on Saturday (Sunday, etc.) night** and **Saturday (Sunday, etc.) night**.

Ex. III, p. 131

1. Отцу пришло в голову/Отца осенило, что взять маму на рыбалку будет даже лучше, чем повезти ее кататься на машине/чем прокатить ее на машине: ведь когда едешь на рыбалку, у тебя есть четкая цель, так что удовольствие становится еще больше. **2.** Отец попросил не обращать на него внимания и сказал, что он может преотлично остаться дома и пусть нас не смущает тот факт, что у него уже три года как не было настоящего отпуска.

Ex. V a)—b), p. 131

- 1. Entered, offered, remembered, cleared, cheered, uttered**
- 2. Occurred, referred, barred, starred, preferred, stirred**

We double the **r** in stressed last syllables of verbs when forming the Past Indefinite, the Past Participle and the Present Participle if **r** follows *one* vowel letter.

Ex. VIII a), p. 132

1. to get smb. to do smth.; 2. to get. smth. arranged; 3. to get over a disease; 4. to get up and down; 5. to look away; 6. to occur to smb.; 7. to turn up; 8. a treat; 9. in the end; 10. to be able to afford smth./to do smth./doing smth.; 11. to keep on doing smth.; 12. to keep smb. from doing smth.; 13. to keep smth. back; 14. to have fun, to have a (very) good/nice/great/excellent time; 15. to care for smth.; 16. for a (little/short) while; 17. to hire a taxi; 18. to get messed up; 19. to make fun of smb.; 20. to make trouble.

Ex. X, p. 133

1. What a treat it is to listen to her singing! 2. After the concert the children were treated to tea and cakes. 3. Turn off the radio, this music is getting on my nerves. 4. I turned the corner and ran into my old friend. 5. Why turn everything upside down to find some trifle? 6. The boy was treated for measles, but it turned out that he had scarlet fever. 7. The girl liked to be treated like an adult/a grown-up. 8. She couldn't keep the boy from pranks. 9. We had a very good time on the beach. It was great fun. 10. It didn't occur to David that he was keeping everybody waiting. 11. Children should be taught to treat animals kindly. 12. Who would have thought that she would become a talented actress? 13. Ah, so that's how you keep your word! 14. "Your friend is so full of fun." — "Oh, is he?/Oh, really? You know/Just fancy, it has never occurred to me before." 15. It occurred many years ago. She must have forgotten all about it./She must have already forgotten everything. 16. What fun it is to play this game! 17. Robert's schoolmates made fun of his green suit. 18. What a funny hat!

Ex. XII a), p. 133

1. Мы могли бы с тем же успехом потанцевать и сейчас. 2. Я бы предпочел взять такси. Я очень устал. 3. Недопустимо/Нельзя наказывать ребенка за то, чего он не совершал. 4. Если это в его силах, он никогда не заставляет себя ждать. 5. Мы должны помешать ему наломать дров/заварить кашу. 6. Возьми мои перчатки, в них твои руки не замерзнут. 7. Что толку украшать эту старую шляпку, все равно она не станет выглядеть лучше. 8. К девяти часам у нас уже все было готово для поездки. 9. Мы сумели сделать так, что она поверила на-

шему рассказу. 10. Боюсь, что я весь день буду занята приготовлениями к вечеринке. 11. Нельзя оставлять детей на улице после наступления темноты. 12. Если не хотите, чтобы вас оштрафовали, сохраняйте/не выбрасывайте билет до конца поездки.

Ex. XIV, p. 134

1. The dress is just wonderful. It is very becoming to you. 2. I haven't seen you for ages. How are you getting on? 3. I liked the cake you treated me to. How do you make it? 4. Turn the page/ Turn over the page and do Exercise 3. 5. He turned out a very good story-teller. I enjoyed his stories immensely. 6. We shall discuss the matter on our way home. 7. I'm sure you'll get over all the difficulties in the end. 8. Pete didn't want to take his younger brother fishing, he was afraid that he would be in his way. 9. The students of Group 3 will help to decorate the hall with flowers and mottoes. 10. The father had promised to take the boys for a drive into the country on Sunday. But unfortunately the weather changed in the morning, and they had to stay (at) home. 11. Celia waved her hand to Lanny until the train was out of sight. 12. For such a big occasion all the children were dressed in their best. 13. When all the things were packed in a suit-case, it turned out that the ticket had somehow got there too, and I had to turn everything upside down in search of it. 14. The children were allowed to stay home from school as the mother's birthday was a great occasion for all the family.

Ex. XV, p. 135

1. I'm so busy/I have so much work (to do)/I'm so snowed under, that I just can't afford to waste/wasting (lose/losing) time. 2. Here's the hat I told you about. I'm sure it will be very becoming to you/it will become you very much. 3. I can't imagine how you will manage to get over/to cope with all these difficulties. 4. I couldn't afford such an expensive present./I couldn't afford to buy/buying such an expensive present. 5. I hope we will be able to get to the underground/subway station before it is closed. 6. I have got a letter from him today. He writes that he has a lot of work to do and he is hardly ever able even to treat himself to going to the cinema. 7. You are getting up and down, coming in and going out all the time. It will never do to work like that. 8. We

are having a party tomorrow, and I want to dress in my (very) best for the occasion. 9. Something has dropped out of my handbag (US purse), probably a pen. 10. He must have got everything arranged for the departure/for leaving. 11. Who would have thought that he had said it in/for fun? 12. Can't you get the child to go to bed in time? 13. The whole family had a great time in the country although the heroine of the day had to stay at home and cook dinner. 14. This colour is very becoming to you/becomes you very much.

Ex. XVIII a), p. 135

Мне всегда казалось, что суть хорошего юмора в том, чтобы он не колот и не жалил/что главное в юморе — это его безвредность и беззлобность. Я готов признать, что всем нам в какой-то мере свойственно то поистине бесовское/то сатанинское чувство юмора — оно же злорадство, — которым отличались наши предки и от которого так же невозможно избавиться, как от первородного греха (то древнее, поистине бесовское чувство юмора, которым отличались наши предки, некая склонность радоваться чужим несчастьям, от которой так же невозможно избавиться, как от первородного греха). Вообще-то нам не должно быть смешно, когда человек — особенно если он толстый и важный — падает, поскользнувшись на банановой кожуре. Но мы тем не менее потешаемся. Когда кто-нибудь катается по скованному льдом пруду, выписывая изящные круги и красуясь перед толпой зевак, и вдруг — раз! — проваливается в воду, все собравшиеся начинают вопить от восторга. Наш далекий пращур-дикарь находил происшествие особенно забавным, если поскользнувшийся ломал себе шею, а провалившийся под лед тонул. Могу себе представить, как группа пещерных людей стоит вокруг полыньи и надывается от хохота. Если бы в те времена существовала такая вещь, как газета, то заметка об этом происшествии вышла бы под заголовком «Забавный случай. Неизвестный джентльмен проваливается под лед и тонет».

Но под влиянием цивилизации наше чувство юмора приутилось и такие происшествия стали смешить нас меньше.

Ex. I, p. 144

- a) breakfast [ˈbrekfəst]
porridge [ˈpɒrɪdʒ]

cornflakes [ˈkɔːnfleɪks]
 bacon [ˈbeɪkən]
 toast [təʊst] (*uncountable*)
 fruit jelly [ˈfruːt ˈdʒeli]
 juice [dʒuːs]
 sufficient [səˈfɪʃ(ə)nt]
 pudding [ˈpuːdɪŋ]
 stewed fruit [ˈstjuːd ˈfruːt] — компот
 substantial [səbˈstænf(ə)l]
 roast beef [ˌrəʊst ˈbiːf]
 omelet(te) [ˈɒmlɪt]
 sausages [ˈsɔːsədʒəz]
 biscuit [ˈbɪskɪt] — печенье

- b) eat — ate, eaten, eating
 fry — fried, fried, frying — жарить (*на сковороде*)
 roast — roasted, roasted, roasting — жарить (*на огне, в духовке и т. п.*)
 accompany — accompanied, accompanied, accompanying
 fill — filled, filled, filling
 bring — brought, brought, bringing
- c) full meal — a big meal, a substantial meal
 plain food — simple food
 a sociable time — a time of friendly intercourse/socializing
 a housekeeping budget — the amount of money set aside to pay for food and other things needed in the home
 to go under various names — to be known under (many) different names
 social standing — position in society

Ex. III a), p. 144

delicious (about food) — very tasty
 layer-cake — a cake consisting of several layers of dough separated by cream, jam, etc.
 oven [ˈʌv(ə)n] — a closed box used for cooking
 napkin — a usually square piece of cloth or paper used for protecting one's clothes and for cleaning one's hands and lips during a meal
 a big eater — a person who eats a lot
 done to a turn — perfectly cooked, cooked neither too much nor too little

seconds — 1. the second course of a meal; 2. another serving of the same food after you have eaten your first serving

Ex. VI, p. 145

1. Take another helping of salad. 2. I think I'll trouble you for another cup of tea. 3. Will you please pass on the sugar? 4. She is going to make some fish soup for dinner. 5. Marmalade is made from orange peel. 6. The egg is eaten with a small spoon. 7. Their meal consisted of two courses. 8. What can you recommend for the first course? 9. The meat is done to a turn. 10. No sugar for me, thank you. 11. At midday people have their meals at home or at/in the canteen. 12. Custard is made of eggs and milk. 13. The fish is just to my liking. 14. The evening meal goes under/by various names in England. 15. I don't take milk with my tea. 16. Help yourself to some pastry. 17. Broth is made by boiling chicken. 18. Will you please hand over the salt-cellar? 19. What do you usually order for dessert? 20. The way to refuse a dish is by saying "No, thank you." 21. You may ask for a second helping.

Ex. VII, p. 146

1. Cornflakes with milk were/Cornflakes and milk was served for breakfast. Then came fried bacon. 2. It is impossible to imagine an English breakfast without toast. It is spread with butter and jam./It is buttered and spread with jam. 3. Breakfast is often eaten in haste/hastily because everybody is in a hurry. 4. Lunch/Dinner usually consists of two courses. Meat (The meat dish/course) is served with a lot of vegetables. Then comes stewed fruit. 5. The so-called "high tea" is rather a substantial meal. 6. He never minds/He is never averse to having something substantial, as he puts it. 7. There is nothing like strawberries with cream. 8. "Is the beefsteak good?" — "I think it's underdone." — "And I think it's done to a turn." 9. "What would you like for the second course/for seconds?" — "Some fish dish as usual." 10. For me there is nothing like chips if they are brown and crisp, of course. 11. "How many lumps of sugar?" — "Thank you, I take my tea without sugar. A slice of lemon, please."

Ex. XIV, p. 148

1. "How many meals a day do you have?" the doctor asked. "Having regular meals is vital for one's/the health." 2. He ate a

plateful of/a full plate of porridge though he had said that he wasn't hungry at all. 3. Today the menu includes meat dishes, stewed vegetables, a sweet pudding, various starters and even ice-cream with fruit for dessert./Today there are meat dishes, stewed vegetables, a sweet pudding, various starters and even ice-cream for dessert on the menu. 4. "How many lumps of sugar would you like?" — "Two will be enough." 5. "Would you like some more salad?" — "Thank you, I've had enough/that's enough." 6. "Is the soup tasty?" — "I haven't tasted it yet, it's too hot." 7. Have you told your sister to fetch clean dishes? 8. "How do you like your tea: strong or weak?" — "Not very strong, please." 9. "What do we have for seconds/for the second course?" — "Fish and chips." 10. Dinner is served in the dining-room. 11. "Shall I butter your bread?" — "Yes, and put some jam on it/and spread it with jam too." 12. We had a light breakfast today and after a walk we are hungry. I wouldn't mind having something substantial. 13. He had a quick supper and got down to work. 14. She likes tinned/canned pineapples better than fresh ones. 15. In this house visitors/guests are always treated to an absolutely special apple-tart. It is delicious. 16. "Her husband likes to take half an hour's nap after a hearty dinner to use his own words." — "It's bad for digestion. He had better walk half a mile or so." 17. "Have you laid the table yet?" — "No, I haven't. I can't find a clean table-cloth."

Ex. XVIII, p. 152

а) Завтрак в доме Дженсенов мало чем отличался от завтрака в любом другом из тысяч и тысяч домов великого города. Уолтер Дженсен ел, читая газету, прислоненную к сахарнице и графинчику для уксуса. Читал он мастерски/сноровисто, не отрывая глаз от газетной страницы, даже когда подносил чашку кофе ко рту. Семилетний Поль Дженсен кушал горячую кашу, которую пришлось щедро сдобрить сахаром, чтобы он согласился к ней притронуться. Дочь Уолтера, пятилетняя Мирна Дженсен левой рукой чесала свою белокурую головку, а правой ела. Мирна тоже была мастерицей своего дела/У Мирны тоже имелась кое в чем сноровка: засунув ложку в рот, она умудрялась сделать так, что каша соскальзывала с нее по языку прямо внутрь, после чего вынимала ложку вверх ногами. Жена Уолтера, Элси Дженсен, на мгновение перестала жевать, чтобы пощупать

языком коренной зуб, которому явно требовалось внимание дантиста.

б) Пока Анна готовилась к встрече с сорока шестью живыми, любознательными детьми, своим классом, ее квартирная хозяйка стряпала ужин для мужа и новой жилички.

Она уже прикрутила старую мясорубку к краю кухонного стола и теперь запихивала в нее кусочки довольно-таки жесткой говядины, остатки того большого куска, который купила в мясной лавке еще в воскресенье. Мяса было явно маловато, но сей вызов нисколько не смутил миссис Флинн: напротив, ее прижимистый дух взыграл, и она тут же решила, что хорошей добавкой к начинке деревенского пирога, который она собиралась испечь, станут горбушка черного хлеба, крупная луковица и помидор.

— Если открыть банку запеченных бобов, — сказала миссис Флинн вслух, — не придется готовить подливку и зазря тратить газ.

С удовлетворением вспомнив, что бобы она купила по сниженной цене на рекламной распродаже в местной бакалейной лавке, она довольно поджала свои и без того тонкие губы и принялась с еще большим рвением крутить ручку мясорубки.

«А вчерашний яблочный крем, — подумала она деловито, — можно подать на трех тарелках, добавив в каждую капельку/чуть-чуть сгущенного молока. Пожалуй, можно было бы придать им праздничный/веселенький вид, положив сверху по вишенке», — подумала было миссис Флинн, поддавшись внезапному порыву расточительности. Отпустив ручку мясорубки, она открыла буфет, в котором хранились консервы в банках и бутылках. В первом ряду поблескивала стеклянная баночка с аппетитными темно-розовыми вишнями. На протяжении долгой, томительной минуты миссис Флинн созерцала ее, и душа ее разрывалась между тягой к прекрасному и бережливостью. Бережливость победила, причем без особых усилий.

— Было бы жаль их открывать, — вслух произнесла миссис Флинн и снова принялась вертеть ручку мясорубки.

UNIT FIVE

Ex. I, p. 158

P a t t e r n 1: 1. By the end of the working day he would wait for her at the factory gate, and they went home together. 2. The spring days were warm and sunny, and the children would spend much time out of doors. 3. When they sometimes asked him about his college days, he would answer that he had greatly enjoyed going to college. 4. The mother never complained; she would only sigh and go on with her work. 5. Her husband often came back tired and angry; at table he would find fault with the cooking. 6. When we told the mother how good everything tasted, she would say, "Hunger is the best sauce."

P a t t e r n 2: 1. He used to say that there was no game like football. 2. She used to leave the dishes unwashed in the kitchen sink and go away. 3. When he was a student, he used to go to the library every other day. 4. My mother used to make a splendid chocolate tart for my birthday. 5. When I was a child, our family used to go to the seaside for summer holidays. 6. When he was younger, he was a pretty good dancer.

P a t t e r n 3: 1. I am not used to being treated in this way. 2. She wasn't used to being made fun of. 3. The doctor was used to treating this horrible disease. 4. I am used to working by such light. 5. The child was used to being refused nothing/to having all his wishes fulfilled.

Ex. II, p. 159

1. It was Doctor Temple who cured Mrs. Greene's husband of his stomach disease. 2. It was Steve who treated them all to ice-creams. 3. It was her brother who told us all about that terrible accident. 4. It was your rudeness that made her cry. 5. It is my mother who does the cooking for all the family. 6. It was those books that made such a deep impression on him and decided his future. 7. It is this noise that doesn't let me concentrate on my work. 8. It was their own poems that these students recited at the last party with a great success./It was these students who recited their own poems at the last party with a great success.

Ex. III, p. 159

1. He used to say that the best remedy for nervous diseases was work. 2. It was Mummy, not I who decorated the table with flowers so nicely. 3. Every time he came he would bring me books I was to read. 4. I am not used to singing before/for/in front of such a large audience, but today I will. 5. It was quinsy, not pneumonia, that he was treated for with this medicine. 6. You used to come home much later before. 7. Whenever it rained, he would feel worse. 8. You don't seem to like Doctor March, do you? But it was he who cured me of that terrible cough. 10. From time to time he would turn a page pretending to read.

Ex. VI, p. 168

1. The leaves of the trees are bright green in spring. — Весной листья на деревьях бывают ярко-зелеными.

Polished steel is bright. — Полированная сталь блестит на свету.

There are several bright pupils in her class. — У нее в классе есть несколько способных учеников.

The boy had a bright face. — У мальчика было умное/счастливое лицо.

Everybody was bright and gay at the party. — На вечеринке все были веселы и остроумны.

She stood in the doorway smiling brightly after him. — Она стояла в дверях, глядя ему вслед с сияющей улыбкой.

The fire shines bright. — Огонь ярко горит.

The sky is brightening. — Небо проясняется.

This wallpaper will brighten our room. — С этими обоями наша комната будет казаться светлее./Эти обои оживят нашу комнату.

What can you do to brighten the life of the sick man? — Что вы можете сделать, чтобы скрасить жизнь больного?

2. The meaning of the word is quite plain, isn't it? — Значение этого слова совершенно понятно/очевидно, не так ли?

I like her plain speech. — Мне нравится, что она выражается прямо и понятно.

She spoke plain English. — Она говорила простыми словами.

They like what they call plain food. — Им нравится то, что они называют/именуют простой пищей.

She looked very pretty in her plain white dress. — Она выглядела очень хорошенькой в своем простом белом платье.

She bought a plain blue material. — Она купила гладкую синюю ткань.

He liked her plain but honest face. — Ему нравилось ее лицо, некрасивое, но честное.

3. There was a blank look on her face. — Ее лицо ничего не выражало. (У нее был безучастный/непонимающий/озадаченный вид.)

She looked at me blankly. — Она посмотрела на меня безучастным/тупым взглядом. (Она озадаченно посмотрела на меня.)

He sat on the edge of the bed staring blankly before him. — Он сидел на краю кровати, безучастно/тупо уставясь в пространство.

Leave a blank after each word. — Оставляйте пробел после каждого слова.

Fill in this blank. — Заполните этот пропуск.

She bought two telegraph blanks. — Она купила два бланка для телеграмм.

4. Judy's ignorance made the girls laugh. — Невежество Джуди вызывало у других девушек смех.

He did it from/through ignorance. — Он сделал это по неведению/незнанию.

The boy has never been to school and is quite ignorant. — Мальчик никогда не ходил в школу и совершенно невежествен.

I am ignorant of his plans. — Я ничего не знаю о его планах.

5. What prompted you to look for him in our town? — Что побудило вас искать его в нашем городке?

She'll prompt you if you forget the words. — Если забудешь слова, она тебе подскажет.

No prompting, please. — Пожалуйста, не подсказывайте.

Aren't you ashamed to wait for a prompt? — Неужели тебе не стыдно ждать подсказки?

6. He recorded all the events of the day. — Он записал все, что случилось за день.

On the very day of his arrival they recorded his speech. — Они записали его речь на пленку в самый первый день после его приезда.

A careful record was made of all those absent. — Преподаватель отметил всех отсутствующих.

The boy's school record leaves much to be desired. — Школьные успехи этого мальчика оставляют желать лучшего.

Have you got any records of Bach? — У вас есть пластинки с музыкой Баха?

I'd rather make use of the cassette-recording to review the material. — Для повторения материала я лучше воспользуюсь кассетой.

Something has gone wrong with the cassette recorder. It doesn't work. — С магнитофоном что-то случилось./Магнитофон сломался. Он не работает.

7. He pointed to the monument. — Он указал на памятник.

The needle of the compass points to the North. — Стрелка компаса указывает на север.

The boy pointed a stick at the dog. — Мальчик направил палку/ткнул палкой в сторону собаки.

The teacher pointed out our mistakes. — Учитель указал (нам) наши ошибки.

He pointed out that all the college rules should be obeyed. — Он заметил, что все правила, действующие в колледже, должны выполняться.

8. Your friend bores me. — С вашим приятелем мне скучно.

I was bored to death. — Я чуть не умер от скуки.

I don't want to see him again, he is such a bore. — Не хочу видеть его опять, он такой нудный/зануда.

This is a very boring book. — Это очень скучная книга.

9. The patient is very ill and must not be excited. — Пациент очень болен, и его нельзя волновать.

Everybody was excited by the news. — Новость всех взволновала.

It's nothing to get excited about. — Из-за этого не стоит волноваться.

Don't get excited over such trifles. — Не волнуйся ты по таким пустякам.

There is nothing to worry about. — Тут не о чем беспокоиться.

She always worries about small things. — Она вечно нервничает по пустякам.

The newcomer excited everybody's interest. — Приезжий/Новичок вызвал всеобщий интерес.

What exciting news you've brought! — Какую потрясающую новость/Какие удивительные новости вы принесли!

I could hardly get over that exciting moment. — Я едва пережил эти волнующие минуты.

She told such an exciting story. — Она рассказала такую захватывающую историю.

The decision to keep Mother's Day caused great excitement in the family. — Решение отметить День матери вызвало у всех членов семейства огромный энтузиазм.

Ex. VII, p. 168

A. blank wall — a wall with no doors, windows or other openings — глухая стена

blank look — 1. a puzzled look — озадаченный вид; 2. an expressionless look — ничего не выражающий взгляд; 3. a look without interest or understanding — безучастный или бессмысленный взгляд

blank verse — unrhymed poetry — белый стих

blank sheet — a sheet of paper without writing, print or other marks — чистый лист бумаги

blank form — a form that has not been filled in — незаполненный бланк

blank cheque — 1. a cheque signed and given to smb. to write in whatever amount they want to receive — незаполненный чек, чек на предъявителя; 2. complete freedom to act as smb. thinks best — свобода рук, карт-бланш

blank years — years spent without sense or result — пустые/бесплодные годы

blank mind — used in the expressions: My mind went/was blank — I completely forgot what I had done/was supposed to do, etc. — У меня случился провал в памяти./Я совершенно ничего не помнил.

blank face — expressionless face, a face not showing one's feelings or thoughts — невыразительное лицо; непроницаемое лицо/выражение лица

- B. empty room — a room in which there are no people at the moment — пустая комната; комната, где никого нет
 shallow interests — interests that are not serious — несерьезные/пустые интересы
 vacant house — a house where no one is living at present — пустой дом; дом, где никто не живет
 shallow girl — a girl, incapable of deep or serious thinking, a light-minded girl — легкомысленная/ограниченная/пустая девица
 bright dress — a dress of intense colour — яркое платье
 bright face — 1. an intelligent face — умное лицо; 2. a cheerful and happy face, a face lit up with joy or hope — счастливое лицо
 bright child — a clever child quick at learning — способный/одаренный ребенок
 bright eyes-shining eyes — блестящие глаза
 ignorant person — a person who lacks knowledge or education — невежественный человек
 incomparable bore — an unbelievably dull and tiresome person — редкостный зануда

Ex. VIII, p. 168

1. He stared at her **blankly**. 2. He opened his eyes for a short while but then **blackened out/went under** again. 3. A faint smile **brightened** her face for a moment. 4. There was a **blank** in my memory. 5. There are many **exciting** items in the newspaper today. 6. The silk stockings **excited/aroused** Judy's envy. 7. He used to be a **bright** pupil. 8. The letter **excited** great interest. 9. At times she felt **miserable**. 10. The trouble with him is that he is a **shallow** person. 11. This fruit is **rather** tasty. 12. Your friend differs much from what he used to be.

Ex. X, p. 169

1. Do you know your part well or do you need a prompter? 2. Of course, Judy wasn't perfect (Judy had **shortcomings/drawbacks/faults**), but at least she was honest. 3. She was very excited because it was her report that was to come first/because it was she who was to make a report first. 4. The girls were not allowed to leave the campus after the bell (had) struck ten. 5. Oliver Twist was brought up in a work-house. From an early age the children had to work hard, wear other people's cast-off

clothes and eat only oatmeal. Most of the teachers were ignorant and treated the children very cruelly. 6. No prompting, please. She does know the lesson, she is just a little nervous. 7. You must fill in the blank/form and sign here. 8. Gemma's plain white dress was very becoming to her/became her very much. 9. Princess Maria was plain, but the smile brightening her face was charming. 10. Irene always dressed simply but tastefully/in good taste. 11. The boy's eyes were bright/were shining with excitement. 12. Judy realized her mistake only when her friends began to laugh. 13. What he needs now is fresh air and plain food. 14. At times it seemed to her that she would not be able to get over such grief. But she had a son to take care of. 15. I am not used to working with a cassette recorder yet. 16. The trouble is that I've lost the tickets and can't find them.

Ex. XII, p. 170

1. The trouble with the book is that it's boring me to death. 2. It will take me at least a month to catch up with the group. 3. What did you buy with the money you got from you father? 4. I need an alarm clock to wake me up in time. 5. I've been writing the letter on and off/off and on for two days, now I've finished it at last. 6. I was perfectly sure to be put down at the desk next to the girl whom I didn't like to sit with. 7. His visit was a surprise to me, I didn't know he was in town. 8. When I come across some English words which I don't know, I always look them up in the dictionary. 9. In his speech he pointed out all the drawbacks of our work. 10. The drills on the English sounds bore me at times, but I know that they are very useful. 11. He helped me a lot with my mathematics, and I'm much obliged to him for it.

Ex. XIII, p. 170

1. You must catch up with the group no matter how hard you have to work. 2. He bored me to death with stories about his adventures. 3. He has at least five mistakes in every test. 4. The trouble is that I've got only fifty kopecks/with/on/about me. What can I buy with this money? 5. No matter how many new words there are in the text, I look all of them up in my dictionary. 6. You make mistakes in every other sentence. 7. I have time and again/I have repeatedly told Boris Petrov, a sophomore/a second-year student, that if he wants to pass the exam, he should study harder. 8. All the students are expected/supposed to know when

the examinations begin. 9. It's difficult to confess/admit that you are wrong, but he had to do it/he was forced to do it. 10. I know that I have done wrong, but at least I have realized that I shouldn't have acted (in) that way/like that. 11. Oliver liked this lively/high-spirited/active bright boy very much, and they became friends. 12. I am obliged to you for your help. 13. You should read more, it will enable you to considerably enlarge your vocabulary. 14. He was staring at me blankly as though he didn't hear what I was saying. 15. Why should you get excited about/over so much trifles? 16. The teacher pointed out the worst/grossest mistakes in the dictation and plainly and clearly explained the rules one should use/to be used to avoid them. 17. Describe in detail your impressions of the trip. 18. I liked his bright mind and plain speech. 19. "What has agitated/excited the class so much?" — "A piece of news/News they have found exciting: they are going to have a new geometry teacher." 20. They used to be good friends. I can't imagine why they have quarrelled. 21. The old man pointed to the picture (hanging/that hung) on the opposite wall.

Ex. XV a), p. 171

Дорогой Длинноногий дядюшка!

Вы никогда не отвечаете на мои вопросы, никогда не проявляете ни малейшего интереса к моим делам. Я несколько не сомневаюсь, что вы выбрасываете мои письма в корзину для мусора, даже не прочитав. Поэтому впредь я буду писать только об учебе.

На прошлой неделе у меня была переэкзаменовка по латыни и геометрии. Оба экзамена я сдала, и теперь я второкурсница.

С каникул я вернулась две недели назад. Жаль было уезжать с фермы, но я была рада снова оказаться в колледже. Приятно возвращаться к тому, что тебе знакомо, а в колледже я уже начинаю себя чувствовать как дома.

Я начала изучать химию, очень необычный предмет, совершенно непохожий на все то, что я учила раньше. А еще я записалась на логику. И на всемирную историю. И на пьесы Вильяма Шекспира. И еще на французский.

Я бы предпочла записаться не на французский, а на экономику, но мне не хватило духу: испугалась, что если на втором курсе я опять не возьму французский, то профессор завалит меня на экзамене (который я таки сдала). Июньс-

кую сессию я одолела еле-еле, но в свое оправдание могу сказать, что в старших классах школы меня учили не очень-то хорошо.

А вот вам еще новость: я стала литератором. Мое стихотворение «Взгляд из башни» будет напечатано в февральском номере нашего «Ежемесячника», причем на первой полосе, что для первокурсницы очень большая честь. Вчера вечером мой преподаватель английского остановил меня по дороге из колледжа в общежитие и сказал, что мое произведение прелестно, за исключением шестой строки, в которой слишком много стоп.

Но иногда меня охватывает жуткий страх: а вдруг я все-таки не гений?

Искренне Ваша,
Джуди

Ex. VI, p. 181

1. In Great Britain the course of study for intending teachers is based on compulsory and optional subjects. 2. The Programme usually consists of three core components. Do you know what they are? 3. Are you going to specialize in Education? 4. It is important for a student to learn the use of different visual aids for/in/during his block-teaching practice. 5. My school practice began when I was in the first year. 6. At our department examinations are held at the end of each term; before each examination the students are given several days which they spend (on/in) revising the material. 7. The English club organized by the students is concerned with extra-curricular activities. 8. Do you enjoy your lectures on Theory of Education? Are they supplemented by/with seminars?

Ex. X, p. 182

Итак, мы в Оксфорде. Стоит лишь очутиться на его широких, чистых улицах, как сразу становится очевидно, что перед тобой старейший образовательный центр Англии/колыбель английского образования. Везде молодые люди в черных мантиях и академических шапочках с плоским квадратным верхом. Студенты Оксфордского университета облачены в широкие черные одеяния, доходящие до середины бедра, а выпускники обычно ходят в мантиях до колен, к которым полагается — по крайней мере в торжественных

случаях — капюшон с шелковой подкладкой цвета, предписываемого их факультетом/по которому можно определить их факультет.

Железнодорожный вокзал Оксфорда расположен примерно в полумиле от района, где сосредоточена большая часть колледжей: Колледж королевы, Университетский колледж, Колледж Св. Магдалины и многие другие.

Все они в совокупности и составляют Оксфордский университет.

На его центральных органах лежат организация лекций по всем предметам, проведение экзаменов и присуждение академических степеней, а сами колледжи занимаются обеспечением своих студентов жильем, а также проведением семинаров и консультаций. В Оксфордском и Кембриджском университетах огромное значение придается именно такой форме занятий. Преподаватели проводят их в своих кабинетах не реже одного раза в неделю, а число участвующих в них студентов не превышает четырех.

Любители старинной архитектуры найдут в Оксфорде немало интересного. Здания многих колледжей являют собой изумительную картину: древние жемчужно-серые стены, величественные башни, живописные готические арки. Перед каждым колледжем расстилается гладкая, как бархат, зеленая лужайка — в то, что подобные лужайки существуют, можно поверить, только увидев их своими собственными глазами, — а летом многие колледжи окружены великолепными цветниками.

UNIT SIX

Ex. I, p. 193

Pattern 1: 1. You needn't have answered this question. It was not meant for you. 2. He needn't have spoken so long, it bored everybody. 3. She needn't have got excited over a little thing like that. 4. Need you have bothered such a busy man with this unimportant question? 5. Why have you come to meet me? You needn't have bothered.

Ex. II, p. 193 (possible variants)

Pattern 2: 1. Today she has been answering her task even better than usual. 2. Are you ill? You are looking paler than usual. 3. The way to his office seemed to him on that day longer than usual. 4. He was in love, and the sun seemed to shine brighter than usual. 5. He is here already, he has come earlier than usual. 6. The soup tastes even better/worse than usual. 7. Unfortunately today I'll return later than usual.

Pattern 3: 1. She addressed us angrily in that harsh voice/tone of hers. 2. Did you happen to see that charming fiancé of Miranda's? 3. I didn't want to come up to you because you were so busy speaking to that dear old mother of yours. 4. I don't like the way she treats that miserable dog of hers. 5. I wish I knew how I should bring up/how to bring up this dear little son of mine. 6. No one any longer believes those tales of his. 7. If I were you, I should throw away these old shoes of yours. 8. Who could have done such a thing but that good-for-nothing cousin of yours? 9. I have heard a lot about that latest blockbuster of Stephen Spielberg's.

Ex. III, p. 193

1. You needn't have come here so early. No one has arrived yet. 2. Because of/On account of those tight shoes of hers she was hardly able to walk. We got to the bus stop later than usual and to be sure/and of course, the bus had already gone. 3. That day/On that day Judy was ill and feeling more miserable than usual. She didn't believe her eyes when she was brought a large box full of rose-buds — a gift from that mysterious guardian of hers.

Ex. I, p. 203

B. 3. It's rather a funny story. — Это довольно-таки смешная история.

I was rather surprised. — Я был несколько удивлен./Это меня несколько удивило.

He went rather pale. — Он заметно побледнел.

I could see he was rather taken aback. — Судя по его виду, это предложение застало его врасплох.

4. 1. If he couldn't get something to do, he'd commit suicide. — If he couldn't *find a job*, he'd commit suicide/kill himself.

2. I got some glimmering of what he was driving at. — I got a *vague idea of*/I began to understand what he was getting at.

3. I had a lot of work to do that morning and I only just managed to get to the creek of Tarumi at half past twelve. — I was very busy that morning and I only just managed to reach the creek of Tarumi at half past twelve.

4. We didn't get the body for about three days. — We didn't find the body for some three days.

5. Well, I hadn't got a vacancy in my office at the moment. — Well, I *didn't have/There was no* vacancy in my office at that time.

Ex. II, p. 203

«Это довольно-таки смешная история, — начал он. — Парень он был неплохой. Мне (он) нравился. Всегда хорошо одет, всегда опрятен. И по-своему красив — кудрявый, белокожий, румяный. Женщины от него просто млели. Вреда от него в общем-то не было никакого, просто человек он был необузданный, только и всего./Да и человек он был незлой, просто необузданный, только и всего. Ну и конечно же, он пил. Такие всегда пьют. Раз в квартал ему присылали из Англии немного денег, и еще примерно столько же он выигрывал в карты. У меня он тоже выиграл немало — это я хорошо помню».

Он не двинулся с места и заметно побледнел, а потом, немного поколебавшись, сказал, что ему в последнее время не везло в карты. Вместо того чтобы, как прежде, играть в бридж, он перешел на покер и проигрался в пух и прах. У него не осталось ни гроша. Он заложил все, что имел, не может оплатить свой гостиничный счет, и ему больше не дают в долг. Он потерял все. Если он не найдет себе работу, то покончит с собой.

— Плавать?!

Я едва верил своим ушам — уж больно нелепо это прозвучало/уж больно нелепым был его ответ.

— Я представлял на соревнованиях свой университет.

До меня дошло, на что он намекает, но впечатления на меня это не произвело. Уж слишком много я повидал на своем веку людей, которые были в своих университетах такими маленькими божками.

— В молодости я тоже неплохо плавал, — заметил я.

Внезапно меня осенило.

Ex. III, p. 203

- a) handsome [ˈhæns(ə)m]
 well-dressed [ˌwelˈdrest]
 quarter [ˈkwɔ:tə]
 experience [ɪkˈspɪ(ə)rɪəns]
 lose [lu:z]
 suicide [ˈs(j)u:saɪd]
 pausing [ˈpɔ:zɪŋ]
 current [ˈkʌrənt]
 aback [əˈbæk]
 shoulder [ˈʃəʊldə]
 drowned [draʊnd]

- b) wild [waɪld]
 rather [ˈrɑ:ðə]
 curl [kɜ:l]
 pawn [pɔ:n]
 pass [pɑ:s]
 constitution [ˈkɒnstɪtjuʃ(ə)n]
 dissipation [dɪsɪˈpeɪʃ(ə)n]
 beacon [ˈbi:kən]
 question [ˈkwɛstʃ(ə)n]
 half [hɑ:f]
 vacancy [ˈvækənsi]
 poker [ˈpəʊkə]
 trifle [ˈtraɪf(ə)l]

Ex. V, p. 204

1. handsome in a way; 2. to know from/by one's own experience; 3. He could lose money at bridge with a good grace. 4. to have bad luck at cards; 5. He didn't want to stick to bridge. 6. He was all to pieces. 7. I understand what he was driving at. 8. I landed at the creek of Tarumi. 9. on account of; 10. He never turned up.

Ex. VI, p. 204

1. She has curled her hair. — Она завилла волосы.

The old man was curling his long moustache. — Старик подкручивал свои длинные усы.

Does her hair curl naturally or does she curl it in curlers? — Ее волосы вьются от природы или она накручивает их на бигуди?

The smoke from our camp-fires curled upwards among the trees. — Между деревьями поднимались клубы дыма от наших костров.

I don't like the way she curls her lip when talking to me. — Мне не нравится, что, разговаривая со мной, она презрительно кривит губы.

The child curled up in the armchair and went to sleep. — Ребенок свернулся калачиком в кресле и заснул.

I don't like curled hair. — Мне не нравятся завитые волосы.

I liked that plump curly-headed little boy. — Мне нравился этот пухленький кудрявый мальчуган.

The girl had long curls over her shoulders. — У девушки были длинные локоны/Кудри, ниспадающие на плечи.

How do you keep your hair in curl? — Что ты делаешь, чтобы у тебя не развивались волосы?

Soon we saw the curls of smoke rise upwards. — Вскоре мы увидели поднимающиеся вверх клубы дыма.

2. He fell and broke his leg. — Он упал и сломал ногу.

Who broke the window? — Кто разбил окно?

Glass breaks easily. — Стекло легко бьется.

The mother broke the bread in two and gave each child a piece. — Мать разломила хлеб пополам и дала каждому ребенку по куску.

The vase fell and broke to pieces. — Ваза упала и разбилась вдребезги.

He was completely broken as a result of the failure of his business. — В результате банкротства своей фирмы он полностью разорился.

She was broken after her husband's death. — После смерти мужа она была совершенно разбита.

to break the law — нарушить закон

to break a promise/one's word — нарушить/не сдержать обещания/слова

to break an appointment — не прийти на назначенную встречу

She broke the appointment. = She did not keep it. — Она не пришла на встречу (в назначенное время и место).

He can't break with his bad habits. — Он не может отделаться от своих вредных привычек.

When she came in, he broke off. — Когда она вошла, он замолчал.

He broke off in the middle of a sentence. — Он вдруг умолк на полуслове.

A fire broke out during the night. — Ночью начался пожар.

The partisans broke through the enemy lines. — Партизаны прорвались через боевые порядки противника.

I feel tired, let's have a break. — Я устал, давай сделаем перерыв.

We have been working since nine o'clock without a break. — Мы работаем с девяти часов без перерыва.

3. to stick a stamp on a letter — наклеить на письмо марку
to stick a notice on a board — наклеить на доску объявление

These stamps won't stick. — Эти марки никак не хотят приклеиваться/никак не приклеиваются.

The nickname stuck to him. — Это прозвище так к нему и прилипло.

Friends should stick together. — Друзья должны держаться вместе/поддерживать друг друга.

You must stick to your promise. — Вы не должны нарушать свое обещание.

Though Tom saw that nobody believed him, he stuck to his words. — Хотя Том видел, что никто ему не верит, он упорно стоял на своем.

The girl stuck a flower in her hair. — Девушка воткнула в волосы цветок.

He stuck his hands in his pockets. — Он засунул руки в карманы.

The splinter stuck in my finger. — Эта заноза сидит у меня в пальце.

The car stuck in the mud. — Машина застряла в грязи.

The key stuck in the key-hole. — Ключ застрял в замочной скважине.

4. He drove the horses into the forest. — Он загнал лошадей в лес.

He's learning to drive. — Он учится водить машину.

Shall we drive home or walk? — Мы поедем домой на машине или пойдем пешком?

Note:

He jumped on his horse and rode away. — Он вскочил на коня и усекал/уехал.

He rode over on his bicycle to see me yesterday. — Вчера он приезжал на своем велосипеде, чтобы повидать меня.

We drove up to the house. — Мы подъехали к дому.

I could not understand what he was driving at. — Я не мог взять в толк, к чему он клонит.

We had a nice drive. — Мы неплохо прокатились (на машине).

Shall we go for a drive round the town? — Прокатимся по городу?

bus-driver — водитель автобуса

tram-driver — вагоновожатый

taxi-driver — таксист

engine-driver — машинист

5. There was a short pause while the next speaker got on to the platform. — Наступила короткая пауза, во время которой на помост взобрался следующий оратор.

A pause is made because of doubt, hesitation or for the sake of expressiveness when speaking, singing, reading, etc. — Человек делает паузу, когда сомневается или колеблется, а также ради большей выразительности в речи, пении, чтении вслух и т.п.

The speaker made a short pause to stress his words. — Оратор/Докладчик сделал небольшую паузу, чтобы подчеркнуть сказанное/то, что он собирался сказать.

He paused to collect his thoughts. — Он замолчал, чтобы собраться с мыслями.

He went on without pausing. — Он продолжал, не делая пауз/не останавливаясь.

Note:

He paused until the noise stopped. — Он замолчал и подождал, пока шум не утих.

6. I asked him if he could ring me up and he nodded. — Я спросил его, может ли он позвонить, и он кивнул.

She nodded to me as she passed. — Проходя мимо, она мне кивнула.

Note:

The servant bowed and left the room. — Слуга поклонился и вышел из комнаты.

She sat in the armchair nodding over her book. — Она сидела в кресле с книгой и клевала носом/дремала.

7. The death of Davy's mother was the ruin of his hopes. — Смерть матери означала для Дэйви крушение всех его надежд/разрушила все надежды Дэйва.

He brought his family to ruin. — Он довел свою семью до разорения.

the ruins of Rome — развалины Рима

The enemy left the city in ruins. — Неприятель оставил город в развалинах/превратил город в руины.

He knew that he himself had ruined his life by stealing the money. — Он знал, что сам разрушил свою жизнь, когда украл деньги.

The fellow ruined himself by card-playing. — Он проиграл все свое состояние в карты./Он разорился из-за игры в карты.

8. The gymnast rubbed his hands with talc. — Гимнаст натер руки тальком.

The dog rubbed its nose against my coat. — Собака потерлась носом о мое пальто.

He rubbed his face/hands dry. — Он насухо вытер лицо/руки.

Rub the oil in well. — Хорошенько вотри масло.

Rub the words off the blackboard. — Сотрите слова с доски.

She rubbed all the pencil marks out. — Она стерла все карандашные пометки.

His manner of rubbing his hands gets on my nerves. — Его манера (довольно) потирать руки действует мне на нервы.

She gave the spoons a good rub. — Она хорошенько протерла ложки.

9. The telephone booth was vacant, and I was able to telephone at once. — В телефонной будке никого не было, и я смог позвонить сразу.

vacant seat — свободное/незанятое место

vacant room — свободный номер (*в гостинице*), свободная комната

vacant house — пустой дом; дом, где никто не живет

vacant flat — свободная квартира; квартира, где нет жильцов

a vacant post/position — свободный пост, свободная должность, свободное место

a vacant mind — тупость, полное отсутствие мыслей

a free person — свободный человек

a free state — свободное государство

a free will — свободная воля; свобода воли, собственное желание, своя воля (*в выражении to do smth. of one's own free will* — сделать что-л. по собственному желанию/по своей воле)

You are not engaged now, are you? — Вы сейчас не заняты, не так ли?/Вы ведь сейчас не помолвлены?

I have spare time today. — Сегодня у меня есть свободное время.

I've got spare cash about me and can lend you 3 or 5 roubles. — У меня при себе есть кое-какие лишние деньги, и я могу одолжить тебе трешку или пятерку.

He had loose clothes on. — На нем была свободная одежда.

All the window frames in my flat are loose. — В моей квартире все оконные рамы разболтались.

We have a vacancy on our staff. — У нас в штате есть вакансия/вакантное место.

We advertised for a secretary to fill the vacancy. — Мы дали объявление в газете, что нам требуется секретарша.

Ex. IX a), p. 204

1. As he was busy yesterday, he couldn't join our company.
2. I tried to get him on the phone, but the line was busy/engaged. As I was busy, I decided to ring him up later.
3. "Is the place next to you vacant/free?" — "No, it is occupied."
4. When I entered the hall, all the seats were occupied, and I could hardly find a vacant/free seat.
5. "Will you be free tomorrow? Let's go to the country." — "No, I'll be busy at my office."
6. "Let's find a vacant

classroom and rehearse our dialogue there." — "I'm afraid at this hour all the rooms are sure to be **occupied**." 7. Have you any **free/spare** time today? 8. At this late hour all taxies will be **busy**. 9. I am young, healthy and **free** to do as I please.

Ex. X, p. 205

1. She stuck a few stamps on the letter and dropped it into the mail-box/letter-box/pillar-box. 2. The friends always stuck together. 3. The key stuck in the lock, and I couldn't open the door. 4. "Are you busy today?" — "Unfortunately I will hardly have any spare time." 5. His only son's death ruined all his hopes. 6. "Are there any vacant rooms in the hotel?" — "Unfortunately all the rooms are occupied." 7. London fogs are ruinous to health. 8. Has everybody copied out these sentences? I am going to rub them off the blackboard. 9. He had a strange habit of rubbing his hands (together) when he was excited. 10. Cold, hunger/starvation and want/indigence ruined Hurstwood's health. 11. The speaker paused to collect his thoughts. 12. You needn't worry, he is a good driver. 13. A shot broke the silence. Mr. Curtel who had been peacefully nodding/dozing in his armchair jumped up and began to look about/round/around. 14. I didn't like swimming in the river on account of/because of the strong current. 15. The teacher waited/The teacher paused till everybody stopped talking and only then went on with his explanation. 16. They broke off as soon as I entered. 17. He promised to help me but broke his promise. 18. On seeing me he curled his lip and just nodded by way of salute/greeting (in salute).

Ex. XV, p. 207

1. My sister's husband was killed in the war, and soon after that her elder child died of pneumonia. No wonder, she was all to pieces/completely broken. 2. He went broke because he played cards and drank a lot. When I met him, he was down and out. Yet, he had always been a nice man, and there was no harm in him. 3. I got some glimmering of what she was driving at. 4. "She is rather a good cook, isn't she?" — "Those sort of women always are." 5. Women think a lot of those sort of men. 6. You said you didn't turn up at the exam on Monday because you were all to pieces. I don't believe it. I'm sure you just **funked** it. 7. Couldn't you lend me a bit more money? I am down and out.

Ex. XXI, p. 208

1. This book is rather dull, you had better take another. 2. The suitcase is rather small, I am afraid you won't be able to pack all your clothes in/into it. 3. "Would you like another cup of tea?" — "Yes, rather." 4. This news rather excited him. 5. I would rather take this record. 6. He is ignorant rather than stupid./He is rather ignorant than stupid. 7. We were rather surprised at his early arrival. 8. She looked rather tired after her two-kilometre walk. 9. She seemed to me rather a good-looking girl/a rather good-looking girl.

Ex. I, p. 216

tobogganing [tə' bɒɡənɪŋ] санный спорт
 yachting ['jɒtɪŋ] парусный спорт; плавание на яхте
 lawn-tennis [lɔ:n'tenɪs] теннис
 wrestling ['reslɪŋ] борьба
 athletics [æθ'letɪks] легкая атлетика (= track-and-field)
 gymnastics [dʒɪm'næstɪks] гимнастика
 calisthenics [ˌkælɪs'thenɪks] художественная гимнастика
 billiards ['bɪljədz] бильярд
 draughts [dra:fts] шашки
 tournament ['tʌənəmənt, 'tɜ:nəmənt] турнир
 enthusiast [ɪn'θju:zɪst] энтузиаст
 soccer ['sɒkə] футбол (*классический*)
 rugger ['rʌɡə] — регби (=rugby)
 court [kɔ:t] корт
 amateur [æmə'tɜ:, 'æmətə, 'æmətʃ(u)ə] любитель (*в спорте и др. видах деятельности*)

Ex. IV, p. 217

wrestling — wrestler
 cycling (велосипедный спорт) — cyclist
 weight-lifting (тяжелая атлетика) — weight-lifter
 swimming — swimmer
 diving (ныряние; прыжки в воду) — diver
 running — runner
 mountaineering (альпинизм) — mountaineer
 boxing — boxer
 skiing — skier
 racing (гонки; скачки) — racer (гонщик; скакун)
 hunting — hunter
 playing football — footballer, football-player

playing chess — chess player
 playing draughts — draught-player
 athletics — athlete
 skating — skater
 playing volley-ball — volley-ball player
 playing basketball — basketballer, basketball player
 playing hockey — hockey player

Ex. V a), p. 217

Sport is very popular in Britain. In other words a lot of British people like the idea of sport, a lot even watch sport, especially on the TV. However, the number who actively take part in sport is probably quite small. On the whole British people prefer to be fat rather than fit.

The most popular spectator sport is football. Football is played on a Saturday afternoon in most British towns and the fans or supporters of a particular team will travel from one end of the country to the other to see their team play.

Many other sports are also played in Britain, including golf in which you try to knock a ball into a hole; croquet in which you try to knock a ball through some hoops; basketball in which you try to get a ball into a net; tennis in which you try to hit a ball so that your opponent cannot hit it and cricket which is played with a ball, but is otherwise incomprehensible. As you can see, if the ball had not been invented, there would have been no sport.

Actually that's not quite true. Athletics is not played with a ball, nor is horse-racing. Perhaps that explains why they are not so popular as football.

Ex. VII, p. 218

shout for his/one's team — to raise one's voice in support of his/one's team while it is playing

is in good form today — is in good shape today, is in a good condition of health and training today

lost the toss — To decide or choose smth. people often (especially in sports) toss a coin, i. e. throw it lightly into the air to see which side of it will be up when it falls. If you say "tails" ("пешка") and it falls with the tails up, you win. But if it falls with the heads ("open") up, you lose.

to play with/against the wind — It is easier for a football team to play when the wind is blowing in their backs.

i. e. they are "playing with the wind" than when it is blowing in their faces, i. e. they are playing against it. If the captain loses the toss (*see above*), his team has to play with their faces to the wind in the first time, but in the second time the teams change places.

to kick off — to begin a game of football by kicking the ball
Come on! — 1. Thy harder! Make an effort! 2. Hurry up!

3. Cheer up!

the game of his life — the most important game of his life, the game that could decide his future and be the making of him (вывести его в люди)

3 minutes to go — There are three minutes left.

Ex. VIII, p. 218

1. I prefer track-and-field/track and field athletics/(Br) athletics/(US) track to boxing and wrestling. 2. I am dreaming of setting (up) a record in swimming. 3. I can't run today. I'm in bad form/shape (out of form/shape). 4. People all over the world follow Olympic Games. 5. He spends a lot of time on athletic training. 6. I support /I am a fan of the football team "Spartak". 7. Our game ended in a draw. 8. He will willingly/gladly/readily coach us in fencing. 9. Do you do/play/go in for track-and-field? 10. Wind-surfing and hang gliding have appeared quite recently. 11. The boy is dreaming of becoming a hockey player and asking his parents to buy him a stick and a puck/asking for a stick and a puck. 12. How many people are going to take part in the Institute chess competition? 13. Wouldn't you like to win the cup in this competition? 14. Who was the first to kick/score a goal? 15. Are you going to (attend) this match? 16. Archery has become rather a popular sport. 17. No one expected them to win with the score of two to nil. 18. He is good at figure skating. 19. "Women don't play football, do they?" — "Yes, they do but rarely." 20. "Who won our Institute draughts competition?" — "One of the freshmen/first-year students." 21. It's not worth joining two sports circles at a time. 22. I prefer calisthenics to any other sport. 23. We won't be able to compete with you, we are out of form/shape. 24. "Are you going to take part in the rowing competition?" — "Sure/Certainly." 25. I am sure that the game will end in a draw/the game will be drawn. 26. We have a splendid gym and all the opportunities for good athletic training.

Ex. XIV, p. 221

1. I seem to know this man. He used to be an excellent runner and now he coaches/trains young sportsmen. 2. "Can it be true that he didn't take part in the cup game?" — "Yes, he was unlucky/ he had bad luck. On the eve of the game he was laid up/ fell ill with pneumonia." 3. I could hardly believe my ears when I heard that our Institute team had won with the score of six to nil (US six to zero). 4. You needn't have hurried. The competition won't be held on account of bad weather. 5. He was awfully upset when he was told that his team had lost. 6. My elder sister has been practising calisthenics for three years. 7. I'm glad that today's game ended in a draw. We may have lost because many of us were out of form. 8. The track and field events have not begun yet. 9. Who set (up) the latest world record in the high jump?

Ex. XV, p. 221

Что-то странное творится на этой узкой дороге к западу от городка. По всей ее длине медленно движется сплошной поток — поток, состоящий из людей в серо-зеленых матерчатых кепках.

Эти люди только что побывали на стадионе футбольного клуба «Браддерсфорд юнайтед ассосийшн». Сказать, что все они заплатили по своему кровному шиллингу за то, чтобы понаблюдать, как двадцать два наемника гоняют по полю мяч, — это все равно что заявить: скрипка — это просто дерево плюс кетгут, а «Гамлет» — просто бумага плюс чернила. За единственный шиллинг «Браддерсфорд юнайтед» подарил вам зрелище, в коем соединились Борьба и Искусство; он превратил вас в критика, с упоением рассуждающего о тончайших нюансах игры, готового мгновенно оценить достоинства хорошо рассчитанного паса, пробега вдоль боковой линии, быстрого, как молния, удара по воротам, ответного удара вратаря или защитника; он сделал из вас энтузиаста, который не дыша застывает, когда мяч влетает в ворота/во вратарскую площадку его команды, впадает в экстаз, когда ее нападающие мчатся к воротам противника, который испытывает то восторг, то уныние, то горечь, то триумф в зависимости от того, удачно или нет складываются дела у его любимцев, который видит, как с помощью мяча создаются новые «Илиады» и «Одиссеи». Но и это еще не все — благодаря «Браддерсфорд юнайтед» вы вступили в новое сообщество, все члены которого на протяже-

нии полутора часов ощущали себя родными братьями, ибо каждый из вас не просто сбежал от неумолимого железного лязга повседневной жизни: от работы, зарплаты, квартплаты, пособий по безработице, выплат по больничным, карточек социального страхования, ворчливых жен, хворающих детей, плохих начальников и ленивых работников — но сбежал вместе с большинством своих друзей и соседей с доброй половиной города, и вы все вместе кричали, подбадривая свою команду, и хлопали друг друга по плечам, и обменивались мнениями, словно короли. Пройдя через турникет, вы очутились в ином, великолепном мире, мире, где есть боль Борьбы, но также есть красота и страсть Искусства. Ну и кроме всего прочего, за свой шиллинг вы получили тему для разговоров, которой за глаза хватит вам на всю неделю.

UNIT SEVEN

Ex. I, p. 230

Pattern 1: 1. There is hardly another hockey team of equal popularity. 2. There was hardly a world championship he missed. 3. There's hardly a vacancy on our staff. 4. We have hardly got any more time but you can finish the composition off at home. 5. There was hardly a living soul at the stadium. 6. There is hardly any reason for their losing the game.

Pattern 2: 1. The coach made the athletes postpone their training. 2. The strangers made Roger drive up to the back yard, and he obeyed. 3. They will never make Andrew break his promise. 4. The conversation made her feel uneasy. 5. Nothing will make him break with his bad habits, no matter what you are saying.

Ex. III, p. 231

1. There is hardly a country the old seaman hasn't been to. 2. There is hardly another city with such a population as Tokyo/with as big a population as in Tokyo. 3. They hardly had another opportunity to free the Gadfly. 4. There is hardly a person who doesn't like puppet shows. 5. Horrible! There is hardly another word to describe my condition/to describe how I felt at that

moment. 6. There was hardly a chess competition he missed. 7. There is hardly another coach as attentive and patient as this one. 8. What made your brother give up boxing? 9. The two young thieves made Oliver climb through the window. 10. Dorian thought that nothing would make him break his promise to Sybil Vane. 11. The actor's performance made the spectators not only feel but also think. 12. What made Byron fight on the side of the Greeks? 13. What made Lanny return to Stilveld? 14. This episode made my sister laugh and upset/saddened me.

Ex. II, p. 239

more than/over a million tons, millions of people, two hundred lakes, 600 feet deep, hundreds of miles, the Thames is a little over 200 miles long, hundreds of small islands, the total area of the United Kingdom is some/is about 94,250 square miles or 244,000 square kilometres and its population is/totals 56 million people

Ex. III, p. 239

- a) the British Isles [ðe. brɪtɪʃ ˈaɪləz]
 Great Britain [ˌɡreɪt ˈbrɪtən]
 Ireland [ˈaɪələnd]
 the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
 [ðɪ juːˈnaɪtɪd ˈkɪŋdəm əv ɡreɪt ˈbrɪtən ənd ˈnɔːð(ə)n
 ˈaɪələnd]
 England [ˈɪŋɡlənd]
 Wales [weɪlz]
 Scotland [ˈskɒtlənd]
 the Irish Republic [ðɪ. aɪrɪʃ rɪˈpʌblɪk]
 Eire [ˈeɪrɪ, ˈe(ə)rə]
 Britain [ˈbrɪtən]
 the Highlands [ðə ˈhaɪləndz]
 Norway [ˈnɔːweɪ]
 the Fens [ðə ˈfenz]
 Holland [ˈhɒlənd]
 Manchester [ˈmæntʃəstə]
 Sheffield [ˈʃefi:ld]
 Europe [ˈjuː(ə)rəp]
 the Straits of Dover [ðə ˌstreɪts əv ˈdəʊvə]
 France [frɑːns]
 the North Sea [ðə ˌnɔːθ ˈsiː]

the Hebrides [ˈhebrɪdɪz]
 the Orkney Islands [ɒi.ɔːkni ˈaɪləndz]
 the Shetland Islands [ðə.ʃetlənd ˈaɪləndz]
 the Lowlands [ˈləʊləndz]
 the Bristol Channel [ðə.brɪstl ˈtʃænl]
 the Dee [ðə ˈdiː]
 the Mersey [ðə ˈmɜːsi]
 the Cheviots [ðə ˈtʃeviəts]
 the Pennines [ðə ˈpenaɪnz]
 the Cumbrian Mountains [ðə.kʌmbriən ˈmaʊntɪnz]
 the Lake District [ðə ˈleɪk.dɪstrɪkt]
 the Cambrian Mountains [ðə.kæmbriən ˈmaʊntɪnz]
 the Severn [ðə ˈsev(ə)n]
 the Clyde [ðə ˈklaɪd]
 the Thames [ðə ˈtemz]
 the Tyne [ðə ˈtaɪn]
 the Tay [ðə ˈteɪ]
 the Forth [ðə ˈfɔːθ]
 the Bristol Avon [ðə.brɪstl ˈeɪv(ə)n]

- b) advantage [ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ] преимущество; достоинство
 canal [kəˈnæl] канал
 channel [ˈtʃænl] пролив
 comparatively [kəmˈpærətɪvli] сравнительно, относи-
 тельно
 desolate [ˈdesələt] пустынный, безлюдный
 determine [dɪˈtɜːmɪn] определять
 estuary [ˈestʃuəri, ˈestʃəni] устье (реки); дельта (реки)
 extremely [ɪksˈtriːmli] чрезвычайно, исключительно, не-
 обыкновенно и т.п.
 glorious [ˈglɔːrɪəs] великолепный, прекрасный, восхи-
 тельный
 heather [ˈhedə] вереск
 indentation [ˌɪndenˈteɪʃ(ə)n] 1. зубец, выемка; 2. углуб-
 ление, извилина (берега)
 manufacture [ˌmænjʊˈfæktʃə] изготавливать, производить
 moor [mʊə] пустошь
 navigable [ˈnævɪgəb(ə)l] судоходный
 occasionally [əˈkeɪz(ə)nəli] время от времени
 plough [plaʊ] 1. плуг; 2. пахать
 scenery [ˈsiːnəri] 1. пейзаж; 2. декорация (-ии)

strait [streɪt] пролив
 total [ˈtəʊtəl] общий, совокупный
 vague [veɪɡ] смутный, неясный
 value [ˈvæljuː] 1. ценность, важность; 2. оценивать, давать
 оценку (*в денежном выражении*); ценить (*что-л.*), до-
 рожить (*чем-л.*)
 vary [ˈveəri] менять(ся), изменять(ся); разнообразить
 wander [ˈwɒndə] бродить; скитаться
 wheat [wi:t] пшеница
 wind I [waɪnd] ветер
 wind II [waɪnd] виться, извиваться (*о дороге, реке и т.п.*)

- c) пахать — to plough, ploughed
 течь — to flow, flowed, flowed, flowing
 извиваться — to wind, wound [waʊnd], wound, winding
 меняться — 1. to vary, varied, varied, varying; 2. to change,
 changed, changed, changing
 бродить — 1. to roam, roamed, roamed, roaming; 2. to
 wander, wandered, wandered, wandering
 ценить — 1. to value, valued, valued, valuing; 2. to
 appreciate, appreciated, appreciated, appreciating
 снабжать — to supply, supplied, supplied, supplying
 ломать — to break, broke, broken, breaking
 выращивать — 1. to grow, grew, grown, growing; 2. to
 cultivate, cultivated, cultivated, cultivating
- d) deer — deer
 sheep — sheep
 fish — fish
 mouth — mouths [maʊðz]
 foot — feet

Ex. IV, p. 241

1. Shallow water is warmer than deep water. 2. Cornwall is famous for its rocky cliffs. 3. Its rich soil is deeply cultivated. 4. This part of the country is noted for severe/extreme cold. 5. The UK total area is some 94,250 square miles. 6. There are low-lying/flat fields in the east of England. 7. There are splendid harbours for ships. 8. In the Northern Highlands of Scotland you'll enjoy the sight of wild/desolate mountains. 9. They were making their way through gentle/rolling/rounded hills. 10. There were

vast plains stretching for miles and miles. 11. Lowlands is the central plain of Scotland.

Ex. VI, p. 241

1. Can you show the main/most important/major British ports on the map? 2. This map is of no great value. 3. Do you know where the river Severn flows/falls into? 4. Owing to constant rains the rivers of Britain give a good supply of fresh water. 5. What mountains separate England from Scotland? 6. North-east of/To the north-east of Scotland there are some islands. What are they called? 7. According to the map/Judging by the map the Isle of Man is comparatively regular in outline. 8. What can keep the crops from severe cold? 9. A comparatively large part of ploughland/arable land in the south-east of England is under wheat. 10. What area of the country are the large coal fields situated in? 11. Within a few miles of/A few miles from London is the town of Croydon where there is a large airport.

Ex. VII, p. 242

- c) солнечный — sunny
туманный — foggy
дождливый — rainy
снежный — snowy
скалистый — rocky
грязный — dirty
дымный — smoky
водянистый — watery
холмистый — hilly
песчаный — sandy
сахарный — sugary
удлиненный — oblong, elongated
предпочтительный — preferable
ценный — valuable
судоходный — navigable
заметный — noticeable
отделимый — separable
определимый — definable
подходящий — suitable
- d) variety-show — эстрадный концерт
wheat-field — пшеничное поле

coal-supplier — поставщик угля

ploughman — пахарь

heather-moor — вересковая пустошь; пустошь, поросшая вереском

horseshoe — подкова

seashore — морской берег

seascape — 1. морской пейзаж; 2. красивый вид на море

earthquake — землетрясение

deer-hunting — 1. охота на оленей; 2. охотящийся на оленей

wheat-growing — 1. выращивание пшеницы; 2. выращивающий пшеницу

sheep-breeding — 1. овцеводство; 2. овцеводческий, разводящий овец

crop-gathering — 1. сбор урожая; 2. собирающий урожай

land-ploughing — 1. вспашка земли; 2. пахущий землю, пахотный

snow-ploughing — 1. уборка снега (*машинная*); 2. снегоуборочный (*о технике*)

shipbuilding (yards) — судостроительные (верфи)

leaf-bearing (trees) — лиственные (деревья)

nature-loving (nation) — любящий природу (народ)

fur-bearing (animals) — пушные (звери)

ocean-going (steamers) — океанские (суда)

food-producing (industries) — пищевые (отрасли)

snow-covered (fields) — покрытые снегом/заснеженные (поля)

smoke-filled (room) — накуренная/задымленная (комната)

man-made (canal) — искусственный (канал)

grass-covered (plain) — покрытая травой (равнина)

see-bound (ship) — идущий в море (корабль)

weather-beaten (face) — обветренное (лицо)

moonlit (path) — лунная (освещенная/залитая луной) (дорожка)

Ex. VIII, p. 242

1. Look at the map of the British Isles. Do you know what the two largest islands are called? — Great Britain and Ireland. 2. The

right-hand side of the map is the East. What sea is east of Great Britain? — The North Sea. 3. In what direction is the Irish Sea from Great Britain? — It is (to the) west of Great Britain. 4. Point to the body of water which is west of Ireland. What do we call it? — The Atlantic Ocean. 5. Towards the bottom of the map is the South. What is towards the top of the map? — The North is. 6. In what direction is Great Britain from the English Channel? — Great Britain is (to the) north of the English Channel. 7. What country is west of England? — The Irish Republic is. 8. Find the Thames. Rivers always flow towards the sea. In what direction does the Thames flow? — It flows south-east. 9. The Severn flows into the Bristol Channel, doesn't it? — Yes, it does. 10. Where does the Severn rise? — It rises in central Wales. 11. What do we call the highest part of Scotland? — The Highlands. 12. Find Edinburgh and Glasgow. In what part of Scotland are they situated? — Edinburgh is situated in the south-east of Scotland, and Glasgow is in the south-west. 13. Where are the Cheviot Hills? — They stretch along the border between England and Scotland. 14. In what direction are the British Isles from the mainland? — They are (to the) west of the mainland. 15. What water body separates the British Isles from the Continent? — The English Channel does.

Ex. IX, p. 243

1. Market prices often vary. — Цены на рынке часто меняются.

I try to vary my diet. — Я стараюсь разнообразить свое питание.

Our opinions differ. — Наши мнения расходятся.

This word has two spelling variants. — Это слово можно писать двояко.

There are various reasons for my refusal. — У меня есть ряд причин для отказа.

I'll give you various exercises on that rule. — Я дам вам несколько различных упражнений на это правило.

They are quite different people. — Они совершенно разные люди.

The novel describes the varied career of an adventurer. — В романе описывается пестрая карьера авантюриста.

You must have more variety in your food. — Вы должны питаться более разнообразно.

I've got some rare varieties of such stamps. — У меня есть несколько редких разновидностей таких марок.

There are some rare varieties of leaf-bearing trees in the park. — В парке есть несколько редких разновидностей лиственных деревьев.

2. The duel scene in "Hamlet" impressed us greatly. — Сцена дуэли в «Гамлете» произвела на нас сильное впечатление.

Her acting was wonderful in the last scene. — Она великолепно сыграла в последней сцене.

In the first act the scene is laid in France. — В первом акте действие происходит во Франции.

Trafalgar was the scene of a famous battle between the British fleet and the combined French and Spanish fleets. — Именно у мыса Трафальгар произошло знаменитое сражение между английским флотом и объединенными флотами Франции и Испании.

I like the way this writer describes rural scenes. — Мне нравится, как у этого писателя описаны сцены сельской жизни.

You could see awful scenes after the earthquake. — После землетрясения можно было увидеть жуткие картины.

The scenery was impressive in the last act. — В последнем действии были эффектные декорации.

They have almost no scenery in that play. — В этой пьесе (у них) почти нет декораций.

I prefer plains to mountain scenery. — Мне больше нравится равнина, чем гористый ландшафт.

I looked out of the window enjoying the scenery. — Я посмотрел в окно, наслаждаясь/любаясь открывающимся передо мною видом.

3. shallow water — мелководье

a shallow dish — мелкое блюдо

a shallow mind — поверхностный/неглубокий ум

a shallow argument — легковесный/несерьезный аргумент

shallow interests — несерьезные интересы

a shallow man/person — лекомысленный/пустой/несерьезный человек

4. the extreme end — самый (дальний) конец, крайняя точка

the extreme edge — самый (дальний) край
the extreme border — самая дальняя граница
in the extreme North — на Крайнем Севере
extreme patience — чрезвычайное терпение
extreme love — невероятная любовь
extreme kindness — исключительная доброта
extreme interest — чрезвычайный интерес
to be extremely interested in smth. — чрезвычайно интересоваться чем-л.
to be extremely sorry for smb. — жалеть кого-л. до глубины души

5. In our hall the students are supplied with all the necessary furniture and bedding. — У нас в общежитии студенты обеспечены всей необходимой мебелью и постельными принадлежностями.

Who will supply the expedition with all the necessary equipment? — Кто снабдит/обеспечит экспедицию всем необходимым оборудованием?

This shop has a large supply of winter coats. — В этом магазине есть большой запас зимних пальто (и курток).

These forests give a good supply of timber. — Эти леса служат хорошим источником древесины.

6. I don't like the shape of his nose. — Мне не нравится форма его носа.

This sculpture hasn't got much shape, I should say. — Я бы сказал, что эта скульптура какая-то бесформенная.

I want to get a brooch in the shape of a horseshoe. — Я хочу купить/хочу в подарок брошь в форме подковы.

He had a ragged coat and a shapeless hat on. — На нем были драное пальто и потерявшая форму шляпа.

shapely figure — красивая фигура

8. The literary value of that book is not great. — Литературная ценность этой книги невелика.

I don't believe you realize the value of his advice. — Думаю, ты не осознаешь всю ценность его советов.

In some years his pictures will be of great value. — Через несколько лет его картины будут стоить очень дорого.

This book will be of no value in your studies. — Эта книга не даст вам ничего полезного для ваших исследований/занятий.

I greatly value his friendship. — Я высоко ценю его дружбу.

We all appreciate a holiday after a year of hard work. — Мы все понимаем, насколько важен отдых после года тяжелого труда.

I greatly appreciate your kindness. — Я очень ценю вашу доброту.

He valued the house for me at 800 pounds. — Я попросил его определить, сколько стоит дом, и он оценил его в 800 фунтов.

It's a valuable picture. — Это ценная картина.

Ex. X, p. 243

1. The English Channel in its narrowest part (the Strait(s) of Dover) is only 32 km wide. 2. The Highlands of Scotland is noted for its wild and desolate beauty. 3. The rivers of Great Britain are of no great value as waterways, some of them are joined by means of canals. 4. The relief of Great Britain varies to a remarkable degree. 5. They took advantage of their stay in London to brush up their English. 6. The chief grain crops are oats and barley. 7. Rivers in England are seldom frozen. Harbours are ice-free. 8. Next to coal and iron, stone and slate are the most valuable minerals in England. 9. The rich soil of south-east England is well cultivated. 10. The Welsh Mountains are very rocky and difficult to climb. 11. The seas surrounding the British Isles are very shallow, usually less than 300 feet deep. 12. Britain's complex geology is one of the main reasons for its rich variety of scenery. 13. In winter eastern Britain faces the colder continent whereas western Britain faces the comparatively warm Atlantic. 14. In most areas the farmer ploughs only the valley lands and the plains where soils are deeper and richer. 15. There are various types of wild vegetation, including the natural flora of woods, fens and marshes. 16. The Lake District is famous for its scenery.

Ex. XI, p. 244

1. Tom Ramsay spent two happy years in (many) different capitals of Europe. 2. Blodwyn, gazing at the dark shapes of mountains before her, knew that rain would fall before night-time. 3. The semi-circular windows were on the level of the floor.

4. He was roaming about/walking the streets with two pence in his pocket and nowhere to go for the night. 5. It was the string of pearls Miss Robinson was wearing and it was estimated at/was worth 50 thousand pounds. 6. Larry had a wonderfully melodious voice with a singular diversity of tone. 7. The children were grateful for the mechanical toys they had never seen before. 8. His hands were long but not large for his size, shapely and at the same time strong. 9. She is twenty years older than me. 10. Unlike the others both could speak good and fluent French. 11. They have just had a terrific row. 12. I used to roam about the sweet-smelling meadows in the evening. 13. He was not interested in your views on the social and moral importance of their relationship. 14. Though she had lost the fresh bloom of early youth, there was not a line on her forehead or under her hazel eyes. 15. The climate is sufficiently diverse for both sub-tropical and sub-arctic plants to be grown in the compass of the British Isles. 16. The British farmer uses a relatively small tract of land producing all kinds of/different products. 17. Tom ran around and stopped a foot or two from the flower. 18. On account of/Because of numerous rapids the river is not navigable. 19. Julia Pendleton liked to sit cross-legged on the couch just to show her lovely legs in silk stockings.

Ex. XII, p. 244

Just off the coast of the mainland of north-western Europe and only nineteen miles distant from it at the nearest point lies the small group of islands known as the British Isles.

The British Isles include Great Britain, Ireland and a number of small islands. Great Britain consists of England, Scotland and Wales. The southern two thirds of Ireland are occupied by the Irish Republic which borders (on) Northern Ireland.

Great Britain is a region of varied lowlands, rolling hills and few mountains. Although the highest peak, Ben Nevis in the Grampians in Scotland, rises to 4,400 feet, such heights seldom occur. The Pennine Range in northern England rises only slightly over 3,000 feet, as do the Cambrian Mountains in Wales.

In the extreme south of England are the famed chalk hills some of which form the Dover Cliffs.

The rivers of the region are short and in general flow from the central and southern lowlands into the surrounding seas. Many of them are connected with each other by canals. The coasts

of the British Isles are washed by the Atlantic Ocean, the Norwegian, North and Irish Seas and two big channels (the English Channel and the North Channel).

Ex. XV a), p. 245

Климат Великобритании определяют теплые течения Атлантического океана. Зимы здесь не отличаются суровыми холодами, а лето редко бывает жарким.

Количество осадков распределено равномерно в течение года.

Небо чаще всего затянуто облаками, пасмурных дней бывает значительно больше, чем ясных; солнце как на побережье, так и во внутренних областях нередко скрыто туманом. Лондонские туманы, часто очень густые из-за примеси дыма — это явление называется смогом, — знамениты на весь мир, но такой славе едва ли стоит завидовать.

Ex. XVI, p. 245

1. Various people we had not expected turned up in the hall. 2. The Angara flows from Lake Baikal (and) into the Yenissey. 3. There is hardly an area in our country where crops are not cultivated/grown. 4. It's amazing/It's a wonder that there are so many fish in such a shallow lake/that such a shallow lake is a home of so many fish. 5. The eagle is a large strong bird with sharp/keen eyesight. It usually lives on cliffs or on mountain tops/on the tops of mountains. 6. The shape of this lonely cliff reminds me of an ancient tower. 7. If you had been able to keep/protect these tulips from the heat, they wouldn't have faded so quickly. 8. Mountain scenery can be found/occurs mainly in the south and east of our/this country. 9. Many times he has seen reindeer wandering/roaming about the tundra. 10. Children should be protected/kept from bad influence. 11. Nowadays you will hardly find any blank spaces on the map.

Ex. XVII, p. 246

a) 1. The soil varies within a few miles in many districts, producing a sharp contrast of scenery and flora. 2. The climate of Great Britain differs greatly from that of the Continent. 3. The weather changes very often in England. 4. The face of Scotland differs from that of South East England. 5. The educational system of Great Britain differs from that of the United States.

6. Tastes **differ**. 7. He looked exactly as she remembered him, as young, as frank, but his expression was **changed**. 8. The average winter temperature **varies** between -3°C and -7°C . 9. What can have happened to **change** him so much? 10. That is a point on which you and she would certainly **differ**.

b) 1. Russia has a **varied** climate because of its vast territory. 2. **Various** branches of industry are found in Greater London. 3. This good wheat land is quite **different** from those being cultivated in northern regions. 4. Britain is immensely **varied** within a small area. 5. The insect fauna in Britain is less **varied** than that of Continental Europe. 6. He has been to **various** places of the extreme North. 7. A glance at the map is enough to see how **varied** the surface of England is. 8. A home in the country is very **different** from an apartment in the city. 9. I have come across him in recent years on **various** occasions. 10. The young man asked me **various** kinds of questions. 11. The newspapers carried **various** reports of the storm. 12. What we wear nowadays is quite **different** from what our ancestors wore. 13. He started to teach me German. He would tell me the German for the **various** objects we passed, a cow, a horse, a man and so on, and then make me repeat simple German sentences. 14. Through many years of **various** conditions he kept thinking of his family. 15. Having tried **various** topics of conversation I felt exhausted.

c) 1. She told Count Borcelli that her necklace was **valued** at eight thousand pounds. 2. Judging by his words he **appreciates** your help. 3. Being asked what he thought of a possible change in the plan he said he **would appreciate** it. 4. But I would not like him to think that I do not **appreciate** the honour that he has done me. 5. The picture is **valued** at a thousand dollars. 6. I suppose only a Frenchman can **appreciate** to the full the grace of Racine and the music of his verse. 7. Jane Austen's work is to be **valued** primarily as satire. 8. Mr. Cook **valued** his secretary for her accuracy.

d) 1. She stayed **alone** in her room refusing to come downstairs. 2. There was a **lonely** house isolated by the mountains. 3. He felt miserable and **lonely**. 4. **Alone** in the house was Miss Sarie Villier. 5. Elliot in his well-cut dinner jacket looked elegant as he **alone** could look. 6. "Do you know that meeting you for the first time is to me like a **lonely** traveller coming across some bright flowerlet

in the desert!" said Sir Francis. 7. He was **alone** when I was ushered in. 8. Frau Becker seemed to look for opportunities of being **alone** with Larry. 9. The British farmhouse is often some distance from a public road. The life there is hard and **lonely**. 10. Young Jolyon **alone** among the Forsytes was ignorant of Bosinney's nickname.

Ex. XVIII, p. 247

1. The better the soil is cultivated, the bigger the crop is. 2. A vast plain stretches from the Urals/the Ural Mountain Range to the river Yenissei. 3. The Volga-Don Canal is one of our main waterways, it is navigable all along. 4. In Vladivostok there is a splendid harbour and many Russian and foreign steamers cast anchor in it. 5. The Strait of Dover separates Britain from the continent/the mainland and the North Channel separates Scotland from Ireland. 6. This crop is valuable as fodder. 7. You have hardly happened/chanced to enjoy more picturesque scenery. 8. Most of the ploughland in this area is under wheat. 9. Just a mile from the shore we could see distinct/clear outlines/shapes of ships riding at anchor in the harbour. 10. The coastline of the Caspian Sea is comparatively/relatively regular in outline (relatively even), only near the mouth of the Volga the coast is deeply indented and there are a lot of small islands and creeks.

Ex. VI, p. 256

1. When we went camping, we put up our tents on the **boundary** of the lake. 2. The **border/frontier** incident was reported by the newspapers in detail. 3. A **border** dispute is a quarrel about where a **border** is or ought to be. 4. The river formed a **boundary** between these rural districts. 5. The half-ruined tower used to be a **frontier** fortress. 6. The region along the boundary between England and Scotland is called the **Border**. 7. A hedge is a fence or a row of bushes or low trees, which are planted to form a **boundary** round a garden or field. 8. Great Britain's **borders**, northern, eastern and southern, are formed by seas and oceans.

Ex. VIII, p. 256

1. The **western** half of our country consists mainly/mostly/primarily of low plains, while/whereas the greater part of the **eastern** half of Russia is covered with mountain chains. 2. In

Siberia the biggest rivers are the Ob, the Yenissei and the Lena. They flow north through a vast area parallel to one another. 3. The climate contrasts are quite striking in Russia. You can find the northerners braving the frosts that reach 70 degrees below zero Centigrade and at one and the same time the southerners basking in the sun on southern seashores lined with green palms. 4. The Leningrad region lies to the north-west of Moscow. 5. A southerner/an easterner is a person who lives in the south/east and a northerner/westerneer is one who lives in the north/west. 6. Devon and Cornwall are situated on the south-western peninsula of England.

Ex. IX, p. 257

There is no other country in the world whose nature is more varied than that of Russia. The western half of the country consists mainly of low plains. The country is divided into two parts by the Ural mountains. The greater part of the eastern half is covered with vast plateaus and mountain chains. Here, on the Kamchatka Peninsula the biggest active volcanoes of the Old World are located.

In the south the plains of the western half of the country are bounded by huge mountain ranges. Here are the country's highest peaks.

Many of the rivers of Russia are among the world's greatest. The most important rivers of the western plain are the Volga, the Western Dvina, the Don and the Northern Dvina.

In the Far East the Amur flows into the Pacific.

In lakes, too, our country is extremely rich. Among them are the world's greatest lake, the Caspian Sea, and the deepest — Lake Baikal.

Ex. XI, p. 257

Our motherland is immense. It's by far the largest and richest country both in Asia and Europe. Its frontier line is the longest in the world.

Natural conditions in Russia vary greatly. If you cross Russia, from the extreme North to the South, you will get a good idea of the climate contrasts, to say nothing of the difference in scenery and vegetation, characteristic of various geographical zones. Siberia is unlike the Urals, the face of Tataria differs from that of the Caucasus. One region is rich in one thing, another is rich in another.

Perhaps no country's geographic location has played such an important part in its history as Russia's. Half Europe and half Asia, its history has revolved round/around/about this basic fact.

Ex. XV c), p. 259
The British Character

The national character dies hard wherever you go. And to no other nation does that apply to a greater degree/extent than to the English whose nature seems to have a sort of patent for constancy. Its stability and permanence is their most obvious/noticeable feature. They are less liable to bow to newfangled trends and transient fashions than other nations. However, one must emphasize /However, it is noteworthy that for all its stability the English national character is made up/composed of contradictory and even paradoxical traits, some of which strike the eye/leap to the eye whereas others are hardly discernible. So any generalizations concerning the English can be disputed.

A materialistic nation — who ever will question that? — the English have nevertheless given the world generously of mystics, poets and idealists. A nation of colonists, they display an ardent devotion to their own country and home.

Tireless seamen and explorers, they are at the same time keen on gardening. Owing to their inquisitiveness they have learnt the best of what other countries possess, but they have remained faithful to their own. While admiring French cuisine/Though they admire French cooking, the English will not imitate it at home. Law-abiding in the extreme though they are, they adore reading about crimes and violence. An epitome of conformity/The picture of conformism, they are at the same time out-and-out/inveterate individualists and there are plenty of eccentrics among them.

To all these paradoxes one should probably add another: paradoxical as it is/for all its paradoxicality the English character is seldom enigmatic or unpredictable.

* * *

I am not claiming/pretending that the English have never changed. Changes take place all the time./There are always changes. But these differences, so noticeable outwardly/on the outside, do not penetrate deep and reach to the roots. For better or for worse, the primordial features of the English nature still

remain a sort of common denominator and exert a deep influence on the national character and general lifestyle.

UNIT EIGHT

Ex. I, p. 267

Pattern 1: 1. The scorching heat and lack of fresh water prevented/kept the explorers from reaching the southern boundaries of the desert. 2. The fog prevented/kept the fishermen from seeing the coast-line. 3. Put on my raincoat, it will prevent/keep you from getting wet for a while. 4. His illness prevented/kept him from taking part in the conference. 5. Her poor knowledge of English prevented/kept her from making a good speech.

Pattern 2: 1. Amy left the room without saying a word. 2. You can hardly realize what an ocean-going ship is without having been inside. 3. They will not come to see us without being invited. 4. He could listen to long verses in Latin without understanding a word. 5. He would mark rhythm with his right foot without realizing what he was doing.

Pattern 3: 1. The smallness of our boat made it easy to navigate in such shallow waters. 2. The rainy season in the tropics made it impossible to move on. 3. The hurricane made the place hard to recognize. 4. His quick arrival made it easy to change our plans. 5. Your sister's new hairdo made her hard to recognize.

Pattern 4: 1. The problem is hardly worth the trouble you have taken/you are taking (the trouble taken). 2. The result was hardly worth the sacrifice and efforts (he) made. 3. Your luggage is hardly worth the fare. 4. The conference was hardly worth the time she had spent getting to it/the long way she had made to come to it. 5. The manuscript turned out to be a variant of the original, so it wasn't worth the time (I had) spent translating it.

Ex. II, p. 268

Pattern 1: 1. Various reasons prevented us from doing optional subjects. 2. Her illness prevented her from qualifying for this post. 3. My neighbour's silly remarks prevented me from

enjoying the performance. 4. His advice prevented us from getting into trouble. 5. The windy weather prevented Father from taking us for a drive.

Pattern 2: 1. You can't leave Great Britain without seeing/having seen the Lake District. 2. She will not take any medicine without consulting a doctor. 3. You shouldn't leave without having a snack. 4. She can't speak about the news without getting excited. 5. You won't be able to pass your exam without working hard.

Pattern 3: 1. Her manners made her unpleasant to deal with. 2. Lack of rainfall makes the soil difficult to plough. 3. The likeness of their names makes them easy to remember. 4. I don't find it necessary to bother him. 5. We find it helpful/useful to make use of tape-recordings.

Pattern 4: 1. The picture is of little value, it is hardly worth the money paid for it. 2. The results of the expedition are hardly worth the efforts made. 3. The trip is hardly worth the trouble taken/you took. 4. The decorations are hardly worth the time (and money) the city authorities/you have spent on them. 5. The victory was hardly worth the sacrifice. 6. The medicine is hardly worth the money I've spent on it/the money it has cost me.

Ex. III, p. 268

Pattern 1: 1. Take the medicine, it will prevent/keep you from catching cold. 2. Something prevented/kept Tom from telling Becky that he had seen Joe the Indian there in the cave. 3. What prevented/kept you from taking that opportunity? 4. She would tell funny stories to prevent/keep the boy from crying. 5. Frank realized that only quick action would prevent/keep him from going broke/ruining himself.

Pattern 2: 1. Molly left town without telling anyone about her suspicions. 2. Gert asked what right Lanny had to make plans without consulting him. 3. Without looking at him Gert said, "You may go." 4. Lanny went out without saying a (single) word.

Pattern 3: Many special terms make his report hard to understand/follow. 2. Care and anxiety/Cares and anxieties made his face hard to recognize. 3. Graphic metaphors made his examples easy to memorize. 4. Everyone finds him easy to deal with. 5. I find your brother pleasant to talk to.

Pattern 4: 1. This stamp is hardly worth the money you've paid for it. 2. The business isn't worth the trouble. 3. The goods is hardly worth its package. 4. This trip is hardly worth the time

spent. 5. James Forsyte thought that fresh air was hardly worth the money paid for country houses.

Ex. II, p. 280

- a) 1. clasp, pass, last (grasp, task, casket, grass, brass, fast)
2. prosperous, conscientious, conscious, obvious, anxious (onerous, covetous, carnivorous, vigorous, dangerous, famous, righteous, spacious, dubious, industrious, obnoxious)
3. sight, light, delight (night, might, tight, bright, fight, blight)
4. earn, earnings, earnestly (earth, earthquake, earl, earldom, early)
5. guess, vaguely (guinea-pig, vogue, guide, guilty, guitar, guest, guarantee, plague)

- b) 'hospitable — гостеприимный
hospi'tality — гостеприимство
'prosperous — процветающий, преуспевающий
pro'sperity — процветание
'festive — праздничный
fe'stivity — празднество
'final — заключительный, последний
fi'nality — окончательность

Ex. V, p. 281

1. No man can serve two masters. — Никто не может служить двум господам. (Нельзя служить двум господам одновременно/сразу.)

He serves as gardener. — Он работает садовником.

He served three years in the army/navy. — Он прослужил три года в армии/на флоте.

These shoes have served me two years. — Эти туфли прослужили мне два года.

A wooden box served as a table. — Вместо стола мы (они и т.н.) использовали деревянный ящик.

The waiter served the soup. — Официант подал суп.

Dinner is served. — Обед подан.

There was no one in the shop to serve me. — В магазине меня некому было обслужить.

It serves you right for having disobeyed me. — Так тебе и надо за то, что ты меня не послушался.

He was in active service during the war. — Во время войны он был на действительной военной службе./Во время войны он был в армии/на флоте и воевал.

He has been in the Diplomatic Service for three years. — Он находится на дипломатической службе уже три года.

The meals at this restaurant are good, but the service is poor. — Кормят в этом ресторане хорошо, но обслуживание здесь плохое.

The train service is good here. — Здесь хорошо налажено железнодорожное сообщение.

She no longer needs the services of a doctor. — Ей больше не требуются услуги/не требуется наблюдение врача.

My room is at your service. — Моя комната к вашим услугам.

2. a familiar voice — знакомый голос

a familiar face — знакомое лицо

a familiar name — знакомое имя

a familiar scene — знакомая сцена, знакомое место

a familiar handwriting — знакомый почерк

a familiar song — знакомая песня

a familiar melody/tune — знакомая мелодия

a familiar scent — знакомые духи, знакомый аромат

a familiar smell — знакомый запах

You should be familiar with the facts before you start investigation. — Перед тем как начать расследование, вам нужно глубоко/досконально ознакомиться с фактами.

He is familiar with many languages. — Он хорошо знает много иностранных языков.

Her face seems familiar to me. — Ее лицо кажется мне знакомым.

Are you on familiar terms with him? — Вы с ним приятели?/Вы с ним на короткой ноге?

Don't be too familiar with him, he's rather a dishonest man. — Не сходите с ним слишком близко, он человек не очень-то честный.

Don't you think he is a bit too familiar with her? — Не кажется ли тебе, что он ведет себя с ней слишком фамильярно?

3. This book did not impress me at all. — Эта книга не произвела на меня совершенно никакого впечатления.

I was greatly/deeply impressed by his acting. — Его игра произвела на меня огромное/глубокое впечатление.

What impressed you most in the play? — Что в этой пьесе произвело на вас наиболее сильное впечатление?

His speech made a strong impression on the audience. — Его речь произвела на слушателей сильное впечатление.

Punishment seemed to make little impression on the child. — Наказания, похоже, мало действовали на ребенка.

Tell us about your impressions of England. — Расскажите нам о ваших впечатлениях от поездки в Англию.

The group left a good/poor/favourable impression on the examiner. — Группа оставила у/произвела на экзаменатора хорошее/плохое/благоприятное впечатление.

an impressive ceremony — впечатляющая/величественная/торжественная/волнующая церемония

an impressive sight — впечатляющий/величественный/волнующий вид

an impressive scene — впечатляющая/выразительная сцена

an impressive person — яркий человек, яркая личность

an impressive gesture — выразительный/эффектный жест

The scene was quite impressive. — Сцена получилась весьма эффектной.

4. Soldiers must obey orders. — Солдаты должны подчиняться приказам.

Children must obey grown-ups. — Дети должны слушаться взрослых.

Parents demand obedience from their children. — Родители требуют от своих детей послушания.

He is an obedient boy. — Он послушный мальчик.

The children have been obedient today. — Сегодня дети хорошо слушались.

disobedient — непослушный

naughty — непослушный, проказливый

5. sunlight — солнечный свет

daylight — дневной/солнечный свет, естественное освещение; дневное время суток

moonlight — лунный свет

gas light — газовое освещение

electric light — электрическое освещение

The sun gives light to the Earth. — Солнце освещает Землю.

I got up before light — Я встал до рассвета.

The light began to fail. — Надвигались сумерки./Свет начал меркнуть.

Lights were burning in every room. — Все комнаты были освещены.

Bring a light quickly! — Огня! (Свечу! Фонары!) Быстрее!

We saw the lights of the city. — Мы увидели огни города.

Look at the matter in the right light. — Рассматривай это дело под правильным углом зрения.

These facts shed a new light on the matter. — Эти данные проливают на дело новый свет.

Give me a light, please. — Дайте мне, пожалуйста, прикурить.

New evidence has recently come to light. — Недавно обнаружались новые улики/доказательства/факты.

As the exams approached, she felt that at last she could see the light at the end of the tunnel. — По мере приближения экзаменационной сессии она наконец почувствовала, что видит свет в конце тоннеля/что конец ее страданиям близок.

a light room — светлая комната

a light day — ясный день

light hair = fair hair — светлые волосы

a light complexion — светлый цвет лица

light brown/green/grey, etc. — светло-коричневый/светло-зеленый/светло-серый и т.п.

light blue — светло-голубой, бледно-голубой

It gets light very early these summer mornings. — Сейчас лето, и по утрам рано светает.

to light a lamp/a candle — зажечь лампу/свечу

to light a fire — развести костер/огонь

He lit a lamp. — Он зажег лампу.

Please light the stove. — Пожалуйста, затопи печь.

turn off the gas — выключить газ

blow out a candle — задуть свечу

put out a fire — погасить огонь/костер

The streets were brightly lit up. — Улицы были ярко освещены.

The room was lighted by six windows. — В комнате было шесть окон.

Our houses are lighted by electricity. — Наши дома освещаются электричеством.

The burning building lit up the whole district. — Зарево от горящего здания освещало всю округу.

The rising sun lit up the mountain tops. — Восходящее солнце озарило вершины гор.

sunlit — залитый/освещенный солнцем

starlit night — звездная ночь

starlit sky — звездное небо

moonlit — залитый лунным светом, лунный (moonlit night — лунная ночь)

6. Rain prevented the game. — Игра не состоялась из-за дождя.

I'll meet you at six if nothing prevents. — Я встречу с тобой в шесть, если ничего не помешает/не помешают обстоятельства.

Illness prevented him from doing the work. — Болезнь помешала ему выполнить работу.

How can you prevent it from happening? — Как ты можешь этому помешать?

Something prevented him from coming/his coming. — Что-то помешало ему прийти.

Prevention is better than cure. — Легче предупредить (болезнь), чем вылечить./Легче предотвратить ошибку, чем исправить ее последствия.

7. He earns a good wage because he works for a fair employer. — Он хорошо зарабатывает, потому что у него справедливый хозяин/работодатель/начальник.

She earned her living by sewing [ˈsəʊɪŋ]. — Она зарабатывала на жизнь шитьем.

His first book earned him the fame of a novelist. — Его первая книга принесла ему славу хорошего романиста./Его первый роман прославил его.

The teacher told her pupils that they had earned a holiday. — Учительница сказала ученикам, что они заслужили каникулы/выходной.

Her good work earned her the respect of her colleagues. — Хорошо работая, она заслужила уважение своих коллег.

He has spent all his earnings. — Он потратил весь свой заработок.

8. to do one's work — делать/выполнять свою работу

to do one's duty — выполнять свой долг

to do one's shopping — делать покупки

to do one's morning exercises — делать зарядку

You did well/wrong to refuse. — Ты хорошо/неправильно сделал, что отказался.

Having nothing better to do I went for a walk. — За неимением лучших занятий я отправился на прогулку.

There's nothing to be done now. — Теперь уже ничего не поделаешь/не напишешь.

No sooner said than done. — Сказано — сделано.

Well begun is half done. — Хорошее начало полдела откачало.

I must do my best to help him. — Я должен сделать все возможное, чтобы помочь ему.

This medicine won't do you any good. — Это лекарство вам не поможет.

His holiday did him a world/a lot/a great deal of good. — Отпуск явно пошел ему на пользу.

It will do you more harm than good. — От этого вам будет больше вреда, чем пользы./Это принесет вам больше вреда, чем пользы.

to do one's hair — причесываться, делать прическу

to do one's room — убрать комнату

to do one's bed — застелить свою постель

I like the way she does her hair. — Мне нравится ее прическа.

Will you do the beds while I do the window? — Застели кровати, пока я буду мыть окно.

Did you do the British Museum when you were in London? — Когда вы были в Лондоне, вы осмотрели экспозицию Британского музея/вы побывали в Британском музее?

We often see foreigners in Moscow doing the sights. — В Москве мы часто видим иностранцев, осматривающих достопримечательности.

It won't do to play all day. — Не годится/Нельзя играть целый день напролет.

The room will do us quite well. — Комната вполне нам подойдет.

It won't do to sit up so late. — Нельзя ложиться спать так поздно.

This sort of work won't do for him. — Такая работа ему не подойдет.

Will this sheet of paper do? — Этот лист бумаги подойдет?

Le Ros did well at the Bureau. — В Бюро Ле Ро добился больших успехов. / В Бюро у Ле Ро хорошо пошли дела.

Everything in the garden is doing splendidly. — Все растения в саду чувствуют себя превосходно.

She is doing very well at school. — Она очень хорошо учится в школе.

Smoking should be done away with. — Необходимо покончить с курением.

to have smth. to do with smb./smth. — иметь отношение к кому-л./чему-л., иметь дело с кем-л./чем-л.

to have nothing to do with smb./smth. — не иметь отношения к кому-л./чему-л., не иметь дела с кем-л./чем-л., не иметь ничего общего с кем-л./чем-л.

to have little/not much to do with smb./smth. — иметь (весьма) отдаленное отношение к кому-л./чему-л., иметь с кем-л./чем-л. мало общего.

He has to do with all sorts of people. — Он имеет/Ему приходится иметь дело с самыми разными людьми.

We have to do with facts, not theories. — Мы имеем дело не с теориями, а с фактами.

I advise you to have nothing to do with him. — Не советую вам связываться с ним/иметь с ним дело.

What have I to do with it? — Какое я к этому имею отношение?

Ex. V, p. 281

- a) naughty — disobedient
good (*about a child*) — obedient
put an end to — do away with
- b) familiar — unfamiliar
obey — disobey
departure — arrival
light *n* — darkness, dark
light *v* — put out, extinguish (*a fire*); blow out (*a candle*);
turn off (*the gas*); turn off/switch off (*an electric light/appliance*)
- c) press — impress, impression, impressive, pressure, pressing
serve — service, disservice, servant
prevent — prevention
earn — earnings

obey — disobey, obedience, disobedience, obedient, disobedient

familiar — unfamiliar, familiarity, to familiarize

Ex. VI, p. 281

1. He advised Frank, "You'll do better if you stay at school until seventeen. It can't do you any harm." 2. At the age of thirteen Frank Cowperwood was able to earn a little money now and then. 3. The auctioneer noticed Frank and was impressed by the solidity of the boy's expression. 4. After his lonely dinner Soames lighted/lit his cigar and walked out again. 5. Jim obeyed the captain's order to ride for Doctor Livesey at once. 6. No one could disobey Captain Flint's orders. 7. They could not marry till Salvatore had done his military service. 8. I knew that his heart was moved by the beauty and the vastness and the stillness. 9. I shall choose the job I am most familiar with. 10. The miller was counting over his money by the light of a candle. 11. "I'm at your service" means "I'm ready to obey your commands". 12. He was peering into the darkness lighted/lit by a single candle. 13. "Why don't you go into the country?" repeated Jane. "It would do you a lot of good." 14. They were at their little table in the room where Carrie occasionally served a meal. 15. When the boy was with us, he was friendly and obedient.

Ex. VII, p. 281

earnings/fee; final; to obey; an impression; a profile; light; to serve (food, drinks, a meal, etc.); a mystery; sociable

Ex. IX, p. 282

1. I saw the mysterious stranger in the morning. 2. I met her for the first time on a warm sunny morning last spring. 3. I recognized her face in the window. 4. I saw no sign of envy in her eyes. 5. Did you confess (to) anything in return? 6. Wait for me on platform No. 3 at the St. Petersburg railway-station at half past ten. 7. What have you got in your hand? 8. I never acted on the stage. 9. She smiled at her fellow-passengers. 10. I heard him recite at a concert last week. 11. Talk to her about the fee. 12. He struck the table with his hand. 13. Did they supply you with everything? 14. I recognized her by/from your description. 15. Just a minute, I shall consult the timetable. 16. What prevented you from confessing (to) everything? 17. The situation is very awkward, but I think I can help it. 18. In other words you

haven't obeyed my instructions. 19. They ran from carriage to carriage along the platform. 20. He said it in a fit of anger. 21. She nodded to me with a grave air. 22. It's a mystery to/for me. 23. I wasn't satisfied with her vague answer. 24. I can't tell you how we all miss you. 25. I can't do without this text-book. 26. I can hardly see anything in this light. 27. Do you think I can do my lessons when you are standing in the light? 28. Has he many pupils on hand?

Ex. X, p. 283

1. Сидя за своим письменным столом, она задумчиво смотрела на знакомые предметы, которые ее окружали. 2. Вы оказали мне огромную услугу. Смогу ли я когда-либо отплатить вам за вашу доброту? 3. Нельзя поддаваться каждому порыву. 4. В этом городе вам ни за что не найти помощницу кормилицы для черной работы. Здесь никто уже не хочет идти в услужение. 5. Благодаря своей красоте и уверенности в себе Чарлз Айвори производил яркое впечатление. 6. Фрэнк ушел из «Уотерман энд компани» только через две недели. 7. К этому времени Сильвер уже усвоил привычку обращаться к нам так, словно мы были друзьями и на короткой ноге. 8. Впоследствии она всегда вспоминалась ему именно такой: стройная девушка, машущая ему вслед с залитого солнцем крыльца.

Ex. XIII, p. 284

1. Something prevented me from attendin/prevented my attending the farewell dinner. 2. My companion's/fellow-passenger's face seemed familiar to me, I must have seen him somewhere before. 3. His critical articles do young authors a lot/a world of good. 4. The letter of introduction did not impress the director at all. 5. He has been earning his living since he was sixteen. 6. I've done my best to prevent him from/to prevent his leaving. 7. Don't read by the light of a candle/by candle-light, it is very bad for/ruinous to the eyes. 8. The information bureau is in the next house but two. 9. He is a very sociable man. 10. For your disobedience you won't get any ice-cream for dessert today. 11. Don't stand in my light, I can't make out what is written here. 12. In (the) old days Moscow streets were lighted by gas. 13. Don't envy his earnings: if you work as much as he does/as him, you will earn no less. 14. We were all moved by his farewell speech.

Ex. II, p. 293

1. I'd be delighted to go on a sea voyage, but my wife has never been a good sailor, so we can't join you. 2. Last week we made a wonderful trip to the mountains. It took us four hours by coach. 3. The Italian tour was really exciting. We visited a number of wonderful towns and then returned to Rome. The journey back to Moscow by railway took us about three days. 4. It is delightful to come ashore after a long voyage and to feel solid ground under one's foot. 5. Many times on his long travels in the depths of Africa, in the jungle of the Amazon he faced danger, starvation and death. 6. At the beginning of the last century going from Petersburg to Moscow was described as "travel". Now it is but a night's trip by night train, a six-hour trip by day train or an air voyage of an hour and a half. 7. I'm just reading a very amusing book about a pleasure party making a Caribbean cruise in somebody's yacht. 8. Young people are naturally fond of hitch-hiking as a way of visiting new places and seeing things: it is cheap and gives one a feeling of freedom and infinite horizons. 9. I'm told you're going on a journey/trip to the Far East. 10. They're planning a tour of some Baltic resorts. They've a new car, you know. 11. You're looking pale. A trip to the seaside will do you good.

Ex. VI, p. 294

N i n a: Hello, Alex. I remember somebody told me that you had gone on an interesting trip to Siberia.

A l e x: I really made a wonderful journey to the very heart of Siberia. We went to Krasnoyarsk by plane and then sailed down the Yenissei on a cargo-ship.

N i n a: And where did you go ashore?

A l e x: Oh, at some spot you are not likely to find on any map. Well, when we found ourselves on the bank, we immediately started for the place where our expedition was working.

N i n a: Did you go by car?

A l e x: Oh, no! No car could have driven along those paths. We travelled partly on foot, and in some places went along small rivers and streams in rowing-boats. We were in spots where no man's foot had stepped before us.

N i n a: How exciting! So you enjoyed the journey, didn't you?

A l e x: Every minute of it, though it was not an easy one.

N i n a: Did you return by air?

Alex: No, by train. The fact is, I had hardly enough money for the railway fare, not to say anything of the plane.

Ex. VIII, p. 295

1. What ports will the "Pobeda" call at? Will it call at Dover? 2. I don't like sea voyages much. I am a bad sailor and I am always sea-sick. 3. Tonight our steamer calls at Naples. There we change for a train and tomorrow we will be in Rome. 4. He couldn't afford to go/going by train, the fare was too high. He got home on foot and by hitch-hiking. 5. Last month a group of our students made an interesting trip to Great Britain. 6. The sea was rough and for several days the passengers kept to their cabins. Some of them had boasted overnight that they were never sea-sick but even they didn't turn/appear up on deck. 7. He made his first voyage on board an old cargo ship bound for/going to Europe. 8. The train had only one sleeping-car/sleeper in which there wasn't a single vacant bunk/berth. There was no dining-car. The beginning of the trip could hardly be called promising. 9. Have you got a ticket for a through/direct train? I hate changes, especially when there is a lot of luggage.

Ex. X a), p. 296

Когда ваш корабль уходит из Гонолулу, вам на шею вешают «леи» — гирлянды из благоухающих цветов. На пристани стоит толпа, а оркестр играет трогательную гавайскую мелодию. Пассажиры кидают с палуб серпантин тем, кто стоит внизу, и весь борт расцветчивается яркими бумажными ленточками: красными и зелеными, желтыми и синими. Когда корабль медленно отходит от причала, ленточки тихо рвутся, и это похоже на разрыв тех нитей, что связывают/нитей, связывающих между собой людей. На мгновение мужчину и женщину соединяет яркая полоска бумаги: красная, синяя, зеленая или желтая — а затем жизнь разъединяет их, и бумага легко лопаается с чуть слышным треском. Еще с час ее обрывки развеваются на ветру, а затем их уносит прочь. Цветы в вашей гирлянде увядают, их запах начинает вас угнетать — и вы выбрасываете их в море.

UNIT NINE

Ex. I, p. 307

Pattern 2: 1. The Murdstones thought David disobedient. 2. Everybody found something mysterious about Lady Alroy. 3. We thought the last scene quite impressive. 4. I found the stranger's voice vaguely familiar to me. 5. Huck Finn couldn't bear his new life at the widow's, he found it extremely dull.

Pattern 3: 1. Sabina came into the hall and saw him sitting at the telephone. 2. We watched the seers-off shuffling from foot to foot. 3. Outside he found Joe standing on the platform. 4. She watched him waving farewell to his friends. 5. I saw Bob playing centre forward.

Pattern 4: 1. Erik started reading the letter again. 2. Soon the porters began pulling luggage along the platform. 3. At last Jack finished writing numerous letters of introduction. 4. Lev Yashin began playing football when he was a teen-ager. 5. Burton's namesake started playing poker and went broke. 6. The Gadfly pulled a chrysanthemum from the vase and began plucking off one white petal after another.

Ex. III, p. 308

Pattern 1: 1. "They have just seen their relatives to the station." — "So have we." 2. "On Sunday we dined out." — "So did we." 3. "I like my beefsteak a bit underdone." — "So does my brother." 4. "They were bored to death listening to his story." — "So were we." 5. Laziness is unforgivable and so is ignorance. 6. "Her son is disobedient/naughty." — "So is mine." 7. My decision is final; I hope so is yours. 8. "Our fellow-passengers/companions turned out (to be) sociable and nice people." — "So did ours."

Pattern 2: 1. Ricardo had met the Gadfly before and thought him rather odd. 2. Judy considered herself totally ignorant in/of many things. 3. When Jack first saw Lady Gwendolen, he found her absolutely charming. 4. Hurstwood didn't believe Carrie talented enough for the stage but thought that the idea of earning one's living in this way was quite sensible. 5. Rosemary thought her action noble and rather daring. 6. Ross found Americans sociable and the English inhospitable. 7. He sincerely believed his work very useful.

Pattern 3: 1. From the other end of the table Andrew watched Charles Ivory operating. 2. Charles and Becky saw light glimmering through a small opening in the cave. 3. Everybody standing on deck watched the sun setting. 4. I can't imagine him doing/going in for/playing/practising sports. 5. We have seen you shaking his hand/shaking hands with him. 6. The poor fellow was extremely surprised/was astonished when he heard Burton offering him a job.

Pattern 4: Gemma had never stopped thinking herself guilty of Arthur's death/blaming herself for Arthur's death. 2. Soon people started coming in groups. 3. He never managed to give up smoking and ruined his health. 4. The captain broke off and began studying the map. 5. Stop treating him like a little disobedient boy.

Ex. II, p. 318

anxiety [æŋˈzaiəti] 1. беспокойство, тревога, волнение;

2. *обыкн. pl* неприятности, заботы

arrival [əˈraɪv(ə)l] 1. прибытие, приход, приезд; 2. вновь прибывший

attendance [əˈtendəns] 1. присутствие; 2. посещаемость;

3. уход, обслуживание

imitate [ˈɪmɪteɪt] подражать, имитировать, копировать

altogether [ˌɒltəˈɡedə] 1. вполне, совсем, совершенно;

2. всего, в общей сложности; 3. в общем, в целом

twopence [ˈtʌpəns] два пенса

properties [ˈprɒpərtɪz] свойства, качества, характеристики (не о человеке)

creased [kriːst] мятый

wearing [ˈweəriŋ] 1. утомительный, изматывающий;

2. скучный, нудный; надоедливый

weary [ˈwi(ə)ri] усталый, утомленный

audience [ˈɔːdiəns] 1. публика, зрители, аудитория; 2. радиослушатели; телезрители

straight [streɪt] 1. *adj* прямой; неизогнутый; 2. *adv* прямо, по прямой линии

desolate [ˈdesələt] 1. заброшенный; 2. необитаемый, безлюдный; 3. неутешный, безысходный

joint [dʒɔɪnt] 1. *n* сустав; 1. *adj* совместный, объединенный

anxious [ˈæŋkʃəs] 1. озабоченный, тревожный, беспокойный (about); 2. сильно желающий чего-л. (for smth.; to do smth.)

grotesque [grəʊˈtesk] 1. гротескный; 2. фантастический, причудливый; 3. абсурдный, нелепый

ragged [ˈræɡɪd] 1. рваный, потрепанный; 2. оборванный, одетый в лохмотья

perhaps [pəˈhæps, præps] может быть, возможно, пожалуй

endeavour [ɪnˈdevə] 1. н (энергичная) попытка, усилие; 2. стараться, стремиться

Ex. VII, p. 319

а) 1. The way we took lay through the forest. — Дорога, по которой мы пошли, проходила через лес.

Can you show me the way to Trafalgar Square? — Как пройти на Трафальгарскую площадь?

Note:

I can show you the way to the nearest village. — Я могу показать вам дорогу/путь к ближайшей деревне.

I can show you a very good road to the village. — Я могу показать вам очень хорошую дорогу/тропинку к деревне.

They made their way through the silent streets of the sleeping city. — Они шли по безмолвным улицам спящего города.

The guide led the way through the forest till we reached a narrow path. — В лесу проводник шел первым, пока мы не дошли до узенькой тропинки.

Let's discuss it on the way home. — Давай обсудим это по дороге домой.

The children lost their way in the forest. — Дети заблудились в лесу.

By the way, what was it she told you? — Кстати, что она вам сказала?

Let me pass, don't stand in my way. — Дай пройти, не стой на дороге.

They couldn't even talk in private: there was always someone in the way. — Они даже не могли поговорить один на один: им все время кто-нибудь мешал.

What was it that stood in the way of her happiness? — И что мешало ей стать счастливой?

Get out of my way! — Прочь с дороги!

I shall get her out of the way for ten minutes, so that you can have the opportunity to settle the matter. — Я избавлю вас от ее присутствия на десять минут, чтобы дать вам возможность уладить этот вопрос/это дело.

The music was unusual but quite beautiful in its own way. — Музыка была хоть и необычная, но по-своему красивая.

She likes to have her own way in everything. — Ей нравится всегда поступать/все делать по-своему.

Have it your own way. — Поступай как знаешь.

That seems to me a very good way out. — По-моему, это отличный выход из положения.

Where there is a will there is a way. — Где хотенье, там и уменье./Кто хочет, тот добьется.

2. All children over seven attend school in our country. — В нашей стране все дети старше семи лет учатся в школе.

She was tired of attending on/upon rich old ladies who never knew exactly what they wanted. — Ей надоело ухаживать за богатыми старухами, которые никогда точно не знали, чего им хочется.

The attendant will show you to your seats. — Билетер проведет вас к вашим местам.

Attendance at schools is compulsory. — Посещение школы является обязательным.

The attendance has fallen off. — Посещаемость упала.

Your attendance is requested. — Просим вас присутствовать.

Now that the patient is out of danger the doctor is no longer in attendance. — Теперь, когда пациент вне опасности, врач уже не находится при нем все время.

3. At the party she wore her wedding dress and he said she looked like a lily-of-the-valley. — На вечере она была в своем свадебном платье, и он сказал, что она похожа на ландыш.

You should always wear blue: it matches your eyes. — Ты должна всегда носить голубое: этот цвет подходит к твоим глазам.

I have worn my shoes into holes. — Я сносила свои туфли до дыр.

The carpet was worn by many feet that had trodden on it. — Ковер был весь истерт подошвами множества людей, которые по нему прошли.

This cloth wears well/badly. — Эта ткань хорошо/плохо носится.

4. I am anxious about his health. — Я беспокоюсь о его здоровье.

Her face was calm, but the anxious eyes betrayed something of what she felt. — Лицо ее было спокойно, но тревожный взгляд выдавал, что творилось в ее душе.

She always gets worried about little things. — Она все время беспокоится по пустякам.

He works hard because he is anxious to succeed. — Он много работает, потому что страстно желает добиться успеха.

The actor was anxious to please the audience. — Актеру очень хотелось понравиться публике.

Isn't he eager to learn? — Неужели у него нет тяги к учебе?

We waited with anxiety for the doctor to come. — Мы с тревогой ожидали прихода врача.

All these anxieties made him look pale and tired. — После всех этих волнений он выглядел бледным и усталым/у него был бледный и изможденный вид.

That anxiety for truth made Philip rather unpopular with some of his schoolmates. — У некоторых одноклассников Филипа его неумное стремление всегда говорить правду вызывало неприязнь.

We anxiously waited for his arrival. — Мы с волнением ждали его приезда.

5. What is the box made of? — Из чего сделана шкатулка?

I'm sure she will make an excellent teacher. — Уверен, из нее выйдет прекрасная учительница.

We'll make him take the medicine. — Мы заставим его принять лекарство.

Soon she made friends with her fellow-passengers. — Вскоре она подружилась с другими пассажирами/со своими попутчиками.

She easily makes friends. — Она легко заводит друзей.

Come in and make yourself at home. — Заходи и чувствуй себя как дома.

Why do you always make jokes? Can't you be serious? — Почему ты вечно острись? Неужели ты не способен быть серьезным?

Before packing make up a list of things you are going to take. — Перед тем как паковать вещи составь список того, что собираешься взять.

You are a fool to listen to his story. He has made it all up. — Ты просто дурак, что слушал его рассказы. Он все это выдумал.

Make up your own sentences using the new words. — Придумайте свои собственные предложения, используя новые слова.

How long will it take the actors to make up? — Сколько времени понадобится актерам, чтобы загримироваться?

She was so much made up that I didn't recognize her at first. — Она была до того накрашена, что я сначала ее не узнал.

I am sorry for what I said. Let's make it up. — Извини за то, что я тебе наговорил. Давай помиримся.

You'd better make it up with Ann. — Лучше бы тебе помириться с Энн.

We must make up for lost time. — Мы должны наверстать упущенное время.

Won't you let me try to make up for all I've failed to do in the past? — Неужели ты не дашь мне возможности загладить свою вину?

Why should you spoil your pretty face with all this make-up? — Зачем ты портишь свое милое личико всей этой косметикой?

6. She was holding a red rose in her hand. — Она держала в руке красную розу.

Holding on to a branch, he climbed a little higher. — Держась за ветку, он взобрался немного выше.

Hold on to the railing, it's slippery here. — Держись за перила, здесь скользко.

A students' meeting was held in our department yesterday. — Вчера на нашем факультете проводилось/состоялось студенческое собрание.

How many people will this lecture-hall hold? — Сколько человек поместится в этом лекционном зале?

Will this weather hold? — Долго ли продержится такая погода?

He nearly fell down, but managed to catch hold of his companion's arm. — Он едва не упал, но сумел ухватиться за руку своего спутника.

The child got hold of a bright flower. — Ребенок схватил яркий цветок.

With every minute it became harder and harder to keep hold of the slippery ropes. — С каждой минутой становилось все труднее удерживать в руках скользкие канаты.

It wasn't her nature to lose hold of anything she had got hold of. — Не в ее характере было выпускать из рук то, что ей удалось заполучить.

7. We are entertaining a lot. — Мы сейчас часто принимаем гостей.

We were all entertained by his tricks. — Нас всех забавляли его штуки.

The conversation was far from entertaining. In fact, it was horribly dull. — Разговор никак нельзя было назвать занимательным. По правде сказать, он был ужасно скучным.

There are many places of entertainment in any big city. — В любом большом городе есть множество мест, где можно развлечься.

- b) road — way, path, track
eager — anxious
amusing — entertaining, funny
wear — have on
- c) to find one's way — to lose one's way, to get lost
to lose hold of — to get/catch hold of, to seize, to grab, to lay one's hands on
- d) attend — attendance, attendant, attending, attention, inattention, attentive, inattentive
entertain — entertainer (эстрадный артист), entertainment, entertaining
wear — footwear, underwear

Ex. VIII, p. 319

a) 1. She always **worries** when she doesn't get my letters for a long time. 2. The letter that informed us of her unexpected departure greatly **troubled/worried** me. 3. I knew that he would willingly help me, but I didn't like to **bother** him. 4. **Don't** worry! Dinner will be ready on time. 5. The child is very weak, and I can very well understand that it **worries** you. 6. **Don't bother** about the taxi. I'll get you home in my car. 7. I felt that he didn't pay any attention to what I was saying. I decided that he was **anxious/was worrying** about something. 8. I shouldn't like to **trouble/bother** you with my tiresome affairs. 9. The climate is very bad there, and I **worry/am anxious** about her health. 10. I'm sorry to **bother** you, but I need his address badly.

b) 1. What are you so **anxious** about? 2. Her **anxious** face was pale. 3. We were full of **anxiety** and worry. 4. Michael was **anxious** to find a job. 5. I was **anxiously** waiting for his answer. 6. His **anxiety** for success made him many enemies. 7. **Anxiety** makes people older.

c) 1. From the age of seven till seventeen I **attended** school. 2. The **attendance** at lectures has fallen off. 3. In this hotel you will be well **attended** on. 4. Your **attendance** is required.

d) 1. Who(m) are you **entertaining** at dinner tonight? 2. His jokes didn't **entertain** us much. 3. The play was not very **entertaining**. 4. Do you know any places of **entertainment** in this town? 5. Do they often **entertain**?

Ex. IX, p. 320

1. Почему вы думаете, что он знает правду? — Это видно по всему. По выражению его лица. По тому, как он разговаривал за обедом. 2. Она улыбнулась своей обычной обворожительной улыбкой. 3. Он все бубнил на одной ноте, и от этого Китти казалось, что его голос доносится откуда-то издалека. 4. Особенно он похвалил нас за то, как успешно мы справились с этой трудной работой. 5. Я не знал, куда смотреть. 6. Я действительно никак не могу привыкнуть к этому новому укладу жизни/к этим новым обычаям. 7. Так вот как ты к нам относишься? 8. Она швырнула тапочки мне в лицо. Вела себя самым возмутительным образом/совершенно возмутительно. 9. Изabella не хотела мешать Ларри. 10. Софи протолкалась между танцующими парами и исчезла в толпе. 11. Я отступил в сторону, чтобы он мог подняться по лестнице. 12. Мать Сюзанны

едва ли могла прожить на свою пенсию при таких ценах.
13. Они побывали в Шартре и теперь возвращались в Париж.
14. Я видел, как официант пробирается между столиками.
15. В комнате имелась узкая железная кровать, а из остальной мебели — только самое необходимое.

Ex. X, p. 320

1. The children were not allowed to go to the lake by themselves. But one day they had their (own) way and did go without saying a word to anyone. On the/their way home they nearly lost their way. Fortunately they met an old forester who helped them to get home. 2. She told/spoke about it cheerfully in her usual charming way/in that charming way of hers. 3. He made his way to the door without saying a word. 4. I don't know this area. Could you lead the way to that place? 5. What way out do you suggest? 6. I am afraid the table will be in your way here.

Ex. XII, p. 321

1. Don't worry your pretty little head about/over the mysterious visitor. 2. By arranging good marriages for her daughters she expected to make up for all the disappointments of her own career. 3. He sat quite still and stared with those wide immobile eyes of his at the picture. 4. "He has a bath in cold water every morning." — "Oh! He is made of iron, that man." 5. Are we in the way? 6. I suppose it was natural for you to be anxious about the garden party. But that's all over now. There's nothing more to worry about. 7. He arrived at the Lomond Hotel, very hot and sweaty and exhausted and had an obscure feeling that they would take one look at him and then ask him to go away.

Ex. XIV, p. 321

1. On entering the hall she looked about/round/around and made her way to the mirror. 2. She caught hold of my hand to keep from falling. 3. We were going down to the river holding on to the tree branches. 4. All evening the boy would keep hold of the toy. 5. The sick man was so weak that he lost hold of the cup. It fell and smashed/broke to pieces/shattered. 6. The children in the next room were making an awful noise, and he couldn't concentrate on the letter, try as he would/no matter how hard he tried/however hard he tried. Of course, he could make them go to the garden, but he didn't want to show his wife that they were in the way. 7. Very

anxious, he was looking for a way out of the unpleasant situation/ the mess but couldn't make up his mind. 8. Mum is very worried/ is worrying a lot/ is very anxious about your health. So am I. 9. She was wearing a lot of make-up/ She was heavily made up, and the way she was talking and laughing attracted everybody's attention. 10. "I've always known several ways of getting rich. But as it happens, keeping hold of the money has always been a problem for me." The elderly passenger talked on and on in the same vein/ way to the entertainment/ enjoyment of all those travelling in the carriage. 11. Mr. Webb was wearing/ wore high heels to make up for his short stature. 12. You can't always have your (own) way. If you behave like this, you will only make enemies.

Ex. XVII, p. 322

Пришла пора отправляться в театр. Фрэнсис Уоберн надел свой высоченный цилиндр, снова заговорил о себе, и они двинулись к «Колизею». Он оказался намного выше, чем прежде думала Роуз, — впрочем, возможно, все дело было в его нелепом цилиндре, — и подле него она казалась себе крохотной толстушкой, правда, толстушкой милой и умной. Она семенила рядом, делая вид, что прислушивается к его рассказу, но на самом деле вместо того чтобы слушать, все время повторяла про себя: «Это я, я, Роуз Солтер, иду сейчас на русский балет в «Колизее» с высоким, шикарным парнем, настоящим лондонцем. Как все это странно!»

Они поднялись на один из балконов громадного театра, который показался Роуз самым что ни на есть великолепным и изумительным местом, которое она когда-либо видела. Внизу, в оркестровой яме, десятки музыкантов настраивали свои инструменты. Публика, такая же шикарная, как Фрэнсис Уоберн, внимательно изучала программки. Затем в зале медленно погасли все огни, кроме тех, что так красиво освещали занавес. Заиграла музыка, Фрэнсис Уоберн замолчал, и Роуз вмиг забыла о его существовании. Музыка оказалась очень странной, не похожей ни на что из слышанного ею раньше. В ней не было ничего уютного, удобного, ласкающего слух. Роуз не могла понять, нравится ей эта музыка или нет: у нее не получалось отодвинуть ее в сторонку, подумать и решить. Она неслась и тонула в грандиозных волнах звука, потрясенная их неотвязным биением и громом труб. Занавес словно по волшебству взвился, пред нею ослепительными красками за-

играла сцена, и ее ошеломленному взору представился незнакомый край, новая, неизвестная вселенная. Последняя мощная волна звука словно подняла ее и швырнула за границы привычного мира. Эльфы, феи и гномы, населявшие эти неизвестные царства, могли жить только в беспрестанном движении. Иногда они бывали скучноватыми. Иногда глупыми. Но по большей части они были так прекрасны, деятельны и грациозны и было так очевидно, что они — существа из другого мира, мира, где царят музыка и яркие цвета, что у Роуз стоял в горле ком и к глазам подступали слезы.

Публика захлопала. Фрэнсис Уоберн захлопал. Но Роуз не могла аплодировать. Просто бить в ладоши, производя глупый шум, — нет, для них этого было слишком мало. У нее был для них лучший дар — все ее сердце.

Ex. V, p. 329

When we arrived, the house was already full. In a few minutes the curtain went up and all eyes turned on the stage. The scenery was very simple, in black, white and grey. Against this background the costumes of the characters looked very impressive. The cast was pretty good and the leading man's acting was just magnificent. When he was on the stage, the attention of the entire audience was fixed on him and his performance. During the celebrated scene from the third act there was death-like/dead/deathly silence. The spectators were overwhelmed/stunned. Many of them wept. Besides, the scene was lighted marvellously. The director was using the lighting to advantage to heighten/enhance the impression made by the actors' performance.

When after the final scene the curtain had gone/went down, there followed a long pause and then a storm/burst of applause (there was a long pause followed by a storm/burst of applause).

Ex. VIII a), p. 331

Chekhov's play "The Sea-gull" was first staged in the Alexandrinsky Theatre in Petersburg. It was a complete failure. The play was ruined by a dull and clumsy production. It was staged in the "good old traditions" whereas Chekhov's plays were quite unlike any other plays written before and demanded new forms and devices. The Petersburg audience did not understand "The Sea-gull". There was laughter in most poetical scenes and many of the audience left long before the end of the play. It was

a cruel blow to Chekhov. However, in the Moscow Art Theatre, which was not a year old then (it was in 1898), the same play directed by K. S. Stanislavsky was a tremendous success. Stanislavsky's production of "The Sea-gull" opened a new epoch in the history of the theatre and symbolized the triumph of the new and progressive forms over the old ones.

In memory of that event a white sea-gull spreads its wings on the curtain of the Moscow Art Theatre.

Ex. IX a), p. 332

The circumstances under which "The Sea-gull" was staged were complicated and painful. Anton Chekhov was seriously ill at the time, as his tuberculosis had got worse. Besides his depression was so deep that he might not have survived another failure of "The Sea-gull" like the one he had seen when it was first produced/put on in St. Petersburg. The failure of the new production might have killed the writer. His sister Maria, tears of anxiety in her eyes, had warned us about it and implored us to cancel the performance. However, we needed it badly because financially the theatre was in bad shape/because the theatre was pressed for money, and we were in need of a new production to raise the box-office returns. Let the readers judge for themselves/ I leave it to the reader to judge what condition we, the actors, were in when we came on the stage to act in the new production for the first time knowing that the house was far from full. Standing on the stage we were listening to the inner voice whispering, "Act well, act brilliantly, achieve a success, a triumph. And if you fail, remember that on receiving your telegram the writer you love will die, put to death by your hands. You will become his executioners."

I do not remember how we performed. The first act concluded amid death-like silence. One of the actresses fainted and I myself was on my last legs from despair. But suddenly after a long pause there was an uproar, a crash, a storm of applause. The curtain moved, went up... then down again and we just stood there, stunned. Then there was an uproar again and again up went the curtain...¹ We were all standing motionless, hardly aware that we were supposed to take curtain-calls. Eventually we sensed

¹ You can avoid using "again" twice: "...was another uproar and again up went the curtain...".

success and extremely excited, began to embrace/hug each other. We cheered M. Lilina who had played Masha and had melted the ice in the spectators' hearts with her closing words. Each act heightened the success and the performance ended in a triumph. Chekhov was sent a detailed telegram.

Ex. XII a), p. 334

А. На свете есть множество людей, которых в театре всегда охватывает волнение, сколько бы раз они туда ни ходили. Для них театр — это таинственный и прекрасный мир; он открывает им двери в царство фантазии, усиливая радость жизни, а создаваемая на сцене иллюзия озаряет их обыденную жизнь золотым светом романтики.

В. В Театре, которому мы с гордостью служим, идеи — это всего лишь летние зарницы, вспыхивающие над бездонным озером чувств. Возможно, театр и стимулирует ум, но главное не это, а то, что он захватывает воображение зрителя, так что тот еще долго видит перед собой актеров и слышит, как они говорят ему о своем отчаянии или надежде.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

REVISION EXERCISES ON TENSE AND VOICE (TO UNITS ONE—THREE)

Ex. 1, p. 434

a) 1. The Present Indefinite (PI) (*am*) is used to denote a present state, and the Present Continuous (PC) (*are coming*) is used to express a planned future action. 2. The PC (*are chattering*) serves to express an action in progress at the moment of speaking. The PI (*is*) is used to denote a present state. 3. The PC (*am telling*) is used to show that the speaker thinks that the action takes place too often and is annoyed by that. Such adverbials as *always*, *constantly*, *all the time*, *forever*, etc. are obligatory in sentences of this kind. 4. The PC (*is working*) is used to express an action going on in the present period of time. 5. The PI (*are*) is used to denote a present state. 6. The PI is used to denote an action going on at the present moment because the verb *hear* is not used in Continuous tenses. 7. The PI (*is*) is used to denote a future action in a conditional clause. 8. The PI is used to denote a present state (*believe*) and a future action in a time clause (*spends*).

b) 1. "What *do you think* of this drawing?" — "I *think* it is excellent." 2. A holiday camp usually *has* its own swimming-pool and tennis courts. 3. She *is playing* tonight. 4. *Do you like* to spend your holidays with hundreds of other people? 5. "What *are you listening* to?" — "It *seems* to me I *hear* a strange noise outside." 6. "Are you *reading* anything in English now?" — "Yes, I'm *reading* a play by Oscar Wilde." 7. I'll join them in their trip with pleasure if they *invite* me. 8. I *don't see* what you *are driving* at. 9. *Did you enjoy* the trip? 10. "Can I see Doctor Trench?" — "I'm sorry you can't; he *is having* his breakfast." 11. I *don't like* the girl; she *is continually bothering* me with silly questions. 12. Please wait till he *finishes*. 13. "Nell *is having* a rest in the south too, I guess." —

"Yes, you *guess* right." 14. "Do you often *get* letters from her?" — "Not so very often."

Ex. 2, p. 435

1. I hear he is writing a new book. 2. I am told he does some translating from German. 3. I hear he is recovering/getting better. 4. I hear you are going to leave us. 5. I hear they have returned from Great Britain. 6. I'm told that you made an interesting report yesterday. 7. He has already left for St. Petersburg, I hear. 8. I hear he sings well. 9. I (can) hear him singing in the next room. 10. We are told that they are coming the day after tomorrow. 11. I hear you have received a letter from your friend Mario. 12. Jane is having a very good time at the seaside, I hear.

Ex. 3, p. 435

a) 1. The Present Perfect is used to express a past action which has a clear result in the present. It can be called the Present Perfect Resultative. 2. The Present Perfect is used to denote an action that began in the past, continued for some time and has just stopped (the Present Perfect Resultative). 3. The Present Perfect Continuous is used to denote an action which was in progress quite recently and affects the present situation. This may be called the Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive. 4. The Present Perfect Resultative/Exclusive (*haven't yet said*) is used to express a past action connected with the present through its result. The Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive (*have been waiting*) is used to denote an action of some duration which began at some moment in the past and has just stopped.

b) 1. "How long *have* you *been* here?" she demanded angrily. 2. This pair of shoes is just what I *have been looking for* to match my new frock. 3. I want you to remember that I *have never asked* you for anything before. 4. "What's that noise?" — "Mary *has broken* a tea-cup." 5. I *have been thinking* about it the last three days. It's such a bother to me. So it really is a relief to talk it over with you. 6. Listen to me, all of you! I *have come* with the most tremendous news. 7. I see you *haven't done* much. What *have* you *been doing* all morning? 8. It's hard to believe that it *has been* only two years and a half since I met him. 9. "We *haven't seen* Edward for a long time. *Has* he *changed* very much?" — "No, he is just the same." 10. Of

course, we trust her. After all, Margaret and I *have known* Lucy all our lives. 11. I *haven't worn* this dress for two years. 12. My watch *has been going* for three days and it *hasn't stopped* yet. 13. Jack *has gone* to Bulgaria for a holiday, I hear. I myself *have never been* there.

с) 1. Я все хотел поговорить с тобой, Люис. 2. Она не покупала новой одежды с начала года. 3. После отъезда он написал мне только одно письмо, а я послал ему четыре. 4. Я хочу предложить тебе кое-что. Мы обсуждали это с твоей матерью. 5. Берил тут рассказывала мне совершенно поразительные вещи. Наверняка она преувеличивала. 6. Я пригласил его пообедать у меня в воскресенье. 7. Именно это я старалась вспомнить с тех пор, как познакомилась с ним. 8. «Не может быть, чтобы это было правдой, — подумала она. — Это мне просто снится». 9. Знаешь, эти последние несколько недель я по тебе очень скучал. 10. Боюсь, я не понимаю тебя, Джеральд. Я не перedomала. А ты?

Ex. 4, p. 436

1. It is half past eight and you *haven't done* your morning exercises yet. 2. I *got up* with a headache today and *decided* to walk to my office instead of taking a bus. Now I am feeling much better. 3. *Did you meet* any interesting people at the holiday camp? 4. She *hasn't had* a holiday for two years. 5. *Did you enjoy* Mary's singing? 6. Where *did you buy* these lovely gloves? 7. "Where *has she gone*? Maybe she is in the lab?" — "No, I've just *been* there. It's locked." 8. Why *have/did you shut* your book? Please open it again on page ten. 9. I am sorry. What *did you say*, Mr. Hartley? 10. His face seems familiar to me. When and where *did I see* him? 11. I hear you *have just got* married. When *did the ceremony take place*? 12. Old George *hasn't been* here for years! 13. "Have you read 'The Man of Property'?" — "I *began* the book last week and *have just finished* it." 14. A few months ago they *pulled* down some old houses in our street and *began* to build a new block of flats. 15. Do you remember my name or *have you forgotten* it? 16. When I *called* on him, I *found* that he *was* out. 17. His first question to the girl *was*: "Where *did you see* the man?" 18. What *was* her answer to your question? 19. Where *did you put* my umbrella? I need it. 20. He *sat* there quietly for a while and then *left* unnoticed.

Ex. 5, p. 437

a) 1. The Past Indefinite (*was* and *seemed*) is used to state past facts (to denote past states), and the Past Perfect (*had been*) serves to express an action that began before the given moment in the past and continued into it. Since the verb in question *to be* is stative and cannot be normally used in Continuous forms, the use of the Past Continuous is impossible. 2. The Past Indefinite (*went*) is used to denote a single past action, and the Past Continuous (*was setting*) expresses an action that was in progress at the moment. 3. The Past Indefinite (*listened* and *could not*) is used to state past facts, and the Past Continuous (*was being said*) shows that the action was in progress at the given moment in the past. 4. The Past Indefinite is used to state a simple fact in the past (*was*) and a single past action (*asked*), and the Past Perfect serves to express an action which preceded the action of the verbs used in the Past Indefinite. 5. The Past Indefinite is used to state a past fact (to denote a past state) (*knew*), and the Past Continuous (*was going*) expresses a planned future action viewed from the past. 6. The Past Indefinite (*were written*) is used to state a simple fact in the past.

b) 1. It *was* the poorest room Hilary *had seen*. 2. No sooner *had* she *arrived* at the station than a fast London train *came* ever. 3. It *was decided* to say nothing to Sidney until the answer *was received/had been received*. 4. Arthur *went* up to his room. Nothing in it *had been changed* since his arrest. 5. No wonder he *was* very tired. He *had been working* too hard for the last three months. 6. I *was trembling* like a leaf. 7. Mr. Dennant, accustomed to laugh at other people, *did not suspect* that he *was being laughed* at. 8. She *said* it in a voice he *had never heard* before. 9. I *looked* into the kitchen. Mary-Ann *was putting* the supper on a tray to take it into the dining-room. 10. I *was* fifteen and *had just come* back from school for the summer holiday. 11. It *had been raining* heavily since morning and she *did not allow* the children to go out. 12. Soon I *got* a letter from her to the effect that she *was returning* from the South of France; she *wanted* me to meet her. 13. Trafalgar Square *was laid* about a hundred years ago. 14. I *had finished* my work for the day and *was resting* quietly in my armchair, thinking of the days that *had gone* by. 15. George, who *had been laughing* loudly, suddenly *broke off*. 16. When Bamby's mother *stood* up, her head *was*

hidden among the branches. 17. She *had been reading* the book ever since she *came* from school and couldn't tear herself away from it. 18. She *had known* Jim for more than ten years, ever since her husband, who *taught/was teaching/had taught/had been teaching* at that time in a Grammar school in London, first made his acquaintance through the Labour Party. 19. He *said* he *had been waiting* for more than an hour. 20. I *was* sure they *had been talking* about me, because they *had broken off/broke off* as soon as I *entered*. 21. He *said* he *had got/got* two letters from Alice. 22. The rain that *had been falling* since the morning *had ceased* by the afternoon, but a strong wind *was* still *blowing* and the sky *was covered* with dark clouds.

Ex. 6, p. 438

1. I hear/I've heard he has recently returned from the Far East. 2. Look here, Tom, I've been wanting to talk to you. 3. We didn't expect/hadn't expected him to come, but he did. 4. He had been ill for two days when the doctor was sent for. 5. I wonder what he thinks about it all. 6. Your eyes are red. Have you been crying? 7. The story he has just been telling you is pure invention. 8. He was breathing heavily and could not utter a word. 9. I have never met him and don't know what he looks like. 10. She put aside the book she had been reading and came up to the window. 11. And now I must go to bed, we are leaving early in the morning. 12. Why have you opened the window? It is very noisy outside. 13. "Have you found the magazine you lost yesterday?" — "Yes, I have." — "And where did you find it?" — "On Father's desk. He had taken it to read in bed before going to sleep." 14. For a minute or so she stared at her father, then turned and walked/went out of the room. 15. She always asks questions. 16. You are looking/look upset. What have they been talking to you about?

Ex. 7, p. 438

a) 1. The Future Continuous tense (*will be sleeping*) is used to express an action in progress at a certain moment of time in the future. 2. The Future Perfect (*will have worked*) is used to denote an action that began before the given moment in the future and will continue up to or into it. 3. The Future Continuous (*will be telling*) is used to denote a future action expected by the speaker. 4. The Future Indefinite (*will try*) is used to denote a simple future

action in a complex sentence with a clause of time. 5. The Future Perfect (*will have forgotten*) is used to express an action that will be completed before the given moment in the future. 6. The Future Indefinite (*will be back*) is used to express a simple fact in the future.

b) 1. How you've grown! Good gracious me, you *will get* a moustache soon! 2. I hope you *won't have forgotten* all this by tomorrow! 3. By next Sunday you *will have been staying* with us for five weeks. 4. If we *don't get* there before seven, they *will do* everything. 5. I *will probably want* to see the book before he *finishes* it. 6. You must not eat any solid food until your temperature *goes down*. 7. I know you *will whisper* when Peg *has gone/is gone*. You always do. 8. When we *got back*, they *were having* supper. 9. Look! The leaves are yellow, they *are going to fall* soon. 10. While I *live*, I *will always remember* his face. 11. I don't think he *will wire* before he *arrives*. 12. Nobody knows when it *will all be settled*. 13. I'm not sure if he *will be glad* to see me. 14. She *will do/will be doing* her home-work after supper. 15. I suppose you *will work/ will be working* very hard in the autumn.

Ex. 8, p. 439

"Shall I call again tomorrow?" *asked* the doctor, before taking leave of the old man.

"Oh, no, we *will send* for you if she *isn't* so well," he *replied*. "She *has hardly had* any temperature today; her cough is easier; and the pain *has quite disappeared*. I can't think, though, how she *has caught* this germ. She *has hardly been* out of the house for the last three weeks, owing to the intenseness of the cold, and nobody else *has influenza*, or even a cold."

"She is certainly very subject to infection. *Has she ever tried* a course of injections to strengthen her system against these germs? Three injections at intervals of a week, at the beginning of the winter, will often work marvels."

"It is difficult to persuade her to take care of herself, doctor," *sighed* the father, "but when she *is better*, I *will certainly suggest* it to her."

Ex. 9, p. 440

Many years ago I *was thrown* by accident among a certain society of Englishmen, who, when they *were* all together, never

talked about anything worth talking about. Their general conversations *were* absolutely empty and dull, and I *concluded*, as young men so easily *conclude* that those twenty or thirty gentlemen *did not have* half a dozen ideas among them. A little reflection *reminded* me, however, that my own talk *was* no better than theirs, and consequently that there *might* be others in the company who also *knew* more and *thought* more than they *expressed*. I *found* out by accident, after a while, that some of these men *had* more than common culture in various directions: one or two *had travelled* far, and *brought* home the results of much observation; one or two *had read* largely, and with profit; more than one *had studied* a science; five or six *had seen* a great deal of the world. It *was* a youthful mistake to conclude the men *were* dull because their general conversation *was* very dull. The general conversations of English society *are* dull; it *is* a national characteristic.

Ex. 10, p. 440

Suddenly there came a knock to the door and Dorian heard Lord Henry's voice outside. He said he couldn't bear his friend shutting himself in and asked Dorian to let him in at once.

Dorian made no answer at first, but then jumped up and unlocked the door.

The first thing Lord Henry said when he entered was that he was sorry for it all but in his opinion Dorian mustn't think too much of it. Then he inquired if Dorian had seen Sibyl Vane after the play was over.

Dorian said that he had and confessed that he had been brutal to her. He added however, that everything was all right and he felt perfectly happy at the moment. He had decided to marry Sibyl Vane because he wanted to be good and couldn't bear the idea of his soul being so bad and ugly.

Ex. 11, p. 441

I *have noticed* that when someone *asks* for you on the telephone and, finding you out, *leaves* a message begging you to call him up the moment you come in, the matter *is* more important to him than to you. When it *comes* to making you a present or doing you a favour, most people *are* able to hold their impatience. So when I *was* told by Miss Fellows, my landlady, that Mr. Alroy Kear *wished* me to ring him up at once, I *felt* that I *could* safely ignore his request.

I *had not seen* Roy for three months and then only for a few minutes at a party. "London is awful," he *said*. "One never *has* time to see any of the people one *wants* to. Let's lunch together one day, shall we?"

As I *was smoking* a pipe before going to bed, I *turned over* in my mind the possible reasons for which Roy *might* want me to lunch with him.

Ex. 13, p. 442

1. "He doesn't know your address, does he?" — "Yes, he does. He has called on me." 2. They had hardly/scarcely/barely covered thirty kilometres when the weather changed. 3. He is a teacher of English. He has been in teaching since he graduated from university. 4. "Where have you been all this time?" — "I'm sorry, I didn't know you were waiting for me." 5. She sat in the garden for a long time and did not know what was going on/happening in the house. 6. The key had been looked for since the very morning, but it was nowhere to be found. 7. I wonder where they put my books. 8. Have you known each other long (for a long time)? 9. Now she is staying with her aunt. 10. Dick was thoughtful for a few days, and it was clear to us that he was thinking over some plan. 11. Next year he will have been living in Russia for ten years. 12. She said she would send a telegram if she didn't hear from home. 13. I hear she has fallen ill and is in hospital now. What hospital has she been taken to? 14. This elderly woman with a kindly face and grey hair is the head physician of the hospital. I've heard a lot about her, she is well spoken of. 15. What a pity that the doctor has left. I didn't ask/haven't asked him when I should take/haven't asked when to take the pills. 16. You'll see, in a moment she'll be telling us about her diseases, visits to the doctor and suchlike.

Ex. 14, p. 442

The landlady *brought* the tea. I *didn't want* anything, but Ted *made* me eat some ham. Then I *sat* at the window. I *did not look* round when the landlady *came up* to clear away, I *did not want* anyone to speak to me. Ted *was reading* a book; at least he *was pretending* to, but he *did not turn* the page, and I *saw* the tears dropping on it. I *kept on* looking out of the window. It *was* the end of June, and the days *were* long. I *was looking* at the people going in and out of the public-house and the trams going up and down. I

thought the day *would* never *come* to an end; then all of a sudden I *noticed* that it *was* night. All the lamps *were/had been lit*.

"Why *don't* you *light* the gas?" I *said* to Ted. "It's no good sitting in the dark."

He *lit* the gas. I don't know what *had come/came* over me. I felt that if I *went on* sitting in that room, I *would go* mad. I *wanted* to go somewhere where there *were* lights and people.

Ex. 15, p. 443

Comments

1. The Past Indefinite (*looked*) is used to express a single action in the past, and the Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive (*has been happening*) serves to express an action of some duration which began in the past and stopped shortly before the moment of speaking. 2. The Past Indefinite (*made*) is used to state a simple fact in the past, and the Present Perfect Durative (Exclusive) (*have been*) serves to express an action which began before the moment of speaking and continues into it. This grammatical meaning is mostly conveyed by means of the Present Perfect Continuous, but with verbs which are not normally used in Continuous forms, such as the verb *to be*, the Present Perfect Durative is found instead. 3. The Present Indefinite (*think* and *am*) is used to express actions in progress at the moment of speaking with the verb *to think* which is non-progressive when it means *to suppose, to consider, to believe, etc.* and with the verb *to be* which in most cases does not admit of Continuous forms either. The Present Continuous (*is wondering*) is used to express an action going on at the moment of speaking. 4. The Past Indefinite (*woke up* and *said*) is used to denote a succession of past actions. The Present Perfect Resultative (Exclusive) (*Have I been asleep?*) expresses an action that began in the past, continued for some time and has just stopped. 5. The Present Indefinite expresses an action in progress at the moment of speaking with the verb *hope* which is mostly used as a non-progressive one, unless the speaker wants to sound very emphatic. The Present Perfect Resultative (Exclusive) (*haven't disturbed*) is used to denote a past action connected with the present through its result. The Past Indefinite (*weren't asleep, were you?*) is used because the action took place during a finished period of time. 6. The Present Perfect Resultative (*have grown*) is used because the past action in question is connected with the present through its results (has

clear consequences in the present). The Past Indefinite is used to denote a single past action (*said*) and to state a simple past fact (to denote a past state) (*was*). The Past Perfect (*had changed*) is used to denote a prior action (an action that was completed before the given moment in the past). 7. The Present Indefinite (*is*) is used to state a simple fact in the present (to denote a present state). The Present Perfect Continuous (*have been keeping*) serves to express an action of some duration which stopped just before the moment of speaking (an action which began before the moment of speaking, continued for some time and stopped shortly before the speaker mentioned it). 8. The Past Indefinite (*loved*) is used to express a simple fact in the past. The structure *used to feed* expresses a habitual action in the past. So does the form *would+Infinitive* (*would ring* and *would come*). The only difference between the two is that the latter conveys an additional modal colouring of will or perseverance. 9. The Past Continuous (*was calling*) is used to express an action in progress at the given moment in the past, and the Past Perfect (*had dropped*) serves to express a prior action. 10. The Present Indefinite (*speak* and *do*) is used to denote a habitual action in the present. 11. The Past Indefinite is used to denote a succession of past actions. 12. The Past Indefinite (*said*) is used to state a simple past fact (to denote a single past action). In *What did you say?* the Past Indefinite is used rather than the Present Perfect because the time when the action took place is definite in the minds of both the speaker and listener, that is they know when the words were uttered and regard that moment as a finished period of time. 13. The Past Indefinite is used in the *when*-clause (*left*) and in the principal clause (*asked*) because the past action in the principal clause follows shortly after the past action of the *when*-clause. The Past Perfect Continuous (*had been telling*) is used in the relative subordinate clause to denote a prior action of some duration that continued up to the given moment in past. 14. The Present Indefinite (*Do you know?*) is used to denote a present state, and the Future Indefinite (*will be out*) serves to express a future state. The Past Indefinite (*looked out* and *was*) is used to state simple past facts.

Translation

1. Она изумленно посмотрела на меня, словно спрашивая: «Что со мною было?» 2. От тихих звуков ее голоса он задрожал. «Мне кажется, я знаю вас уже много лет», — промолви-

ла она. 3. А теперь, папа, мне, пожалуй, лучше вернуться, а то мама, наверное, уже гадает, куда я подевался. 4. Потом она проснулась и спросила: «Я что, спала?» 5. Надеюсь, я вас не побеспокоил. Ведь вы же не спали? 6. «Как ты выросла!» — сказал Рэндал. Так оно и было. Она изменилась. 7. О господи! Что это за звуки? Да это же бой часов! 8. «Стив любил птиц, — сказала Миранда. — Он всегда, бывало, кормил их. Каждое утро звонил в колокольчик, и они прилетали». 9. Ветер немного утих, и где-то за домом куковала кукушка. 10. Вы, как всегда, заставляете меня смотреть в лицо реальности. Все, что вы говорили, совершенно верно. 11. Эмма сняла очки и отложила вязание в сторону, потом закрыла глаза и погладила своими длинными пальцами сомкнутые веки. 12. Она встрепелась: «Извини, Люси, что ты сказала?» 13. Когда Френсис и Фой ушли, Кэтрин спросила Льюиса, что они рассказывали ему про молодого Люка. 14. Вы не знаете, когда будут известны результаты? 15. Он посмотрел на часы. Пора было входить. Милдред, должно быть, уже ждала его.

Ex. 16, p. 443

1. Let's have dinner up here. If we go down to the restaurant, we will be interrupted, and the music is so loud there. We won't be able to hear each other speak. — Давайте поужинаем здесь. Если мы спустимся в ресторан, нас будут перебивать, к тому же там слишком громко играет музыка. Мы просто не расслышим друг друга. 2. You have really never been to a ball, Leila? — Ты что, Лейла, и вправду никогда раньше не бывала на балу? 3. My wife has been in Europe for the last ten months on a visit to our eldest daughter who was married last year. — Последние десять месяцев моя жена находится в Европе. Она поехала туда, чтобы навестить нашу старшую дочь, которая в прошлом году вышла замуж. 4. Hello, John! Have you been waiting long? — Привет, Джон! Давно ждешь? 5. She told him that she rang/had rung him, but she had not done so. — Она сказала, что звонила ему, но это была неправда. 6. He looked up with surprise, "India? Did you go to India?" — Он посмотрел на него/нее и т.п. с удивлением: «В Индии? Вы были в Индии?» 7. I have never known anyone I have liked as much as I like you. I have never felt so happy with anyone. But I am sure it is not what people and what books mean when they talk about love. — Я никогда не встречала никого, кто нравился бы мне так, как вы. Я ни с кем не

чувствовала себя такой счастливой. Но я уверена: это не то, что имеют в виду, когда говорят или пишут о любви. 8. It was now over a year. He *had not heard* from her since she *left*, except for a postcard. — Прошло уже больше года. С тех пор как она уехала, он не получил от нее ни весточки, если не считать одной-единственной открытки. 9. The green door *opened and shut* again, and all *was* silence. He *waited* a minute or two. What *were* they *saying* to each other now? — Зеленая дверь открылась, потом опять закрылась, и все погрузилось в тишину. Он подождал минуту или две. Что же они говорят друг другу? 10. "She *will be* disappointed if you *don't come*." Randall *hesitated*. "No," he *said*. "I *won't come* in. You can go alone." — «Она будет разочарована, если ты не придешь». Рэндал заколебался. «Нет, — сказал он. — Я не войду. Можешь идти один». 11. Good heavens, my old doll! Did you *find* it in Ann's room? I *had forgotten* all about it by now. — Господи, помилуй, голубушка ты моя! Ты нашла это в комнате Анны? А я-то уже обо всем забыл. 12. My mother *is coming* to stay with us next weekend. — На выходные к нам приедет погостить моя мама. 13. The garden *looks* quite different now that the leaves *have fallen*. — Теперь, когда листья опали, сад выглядит совсем по-другому. 14. I *am sure* you *will have finished* your work by six o'clock. — Уверен, что ты закончишь работу к шести. 15. She *says* she *will do* the washing tomorrow. — Она говорит, что займется стиркой завтра. 16. Jago *told* Eliot that Nightingale and he *had just been discussing* the future of the college. — Джейроу сказал Элиоту, что они с Найтингейлом только что обсуждали будущее колледжа.

Ex. 17, p. 444

1. I only want to ask when the decision *will be taken*; we'd like to know the date, that's all. 2. "Hello, you two," he *cried* gaily. "Where *have* you *been hiding*?" 3. I'm afraid I must be off now. My parents *have come* unexpectedly. Thank you, Mrs. Welch, I *enjoyed* myself very much. 4. Margaret Peel *has told* me that Bertrand *is coming* down at the weekend. 5. He was alarmed by the thought that he *would have* to talk to the girl all the way back. 6. In the dining-saloon he *noticed* that the dark man who *had been dining* alone *was* now at the table with Mrs. Cockson and Mrs. Benson. 7. Mr. Pinfold *did not sleep* for very long. He *awoke* as usual very early. 8. I don't see what you *are driving* at.

9. I know very little of him, though we *have been living/have lived* so near all these years. 10. I *have wanted/have been wanting* us to have a little talk for quite some time, old boy. Ever since that summer Ball, in fact. 11. As they *were strolling* up College Road, Beesley began talking about the examination results in his Department. 12. I want to send a telegram. I *am not feeling/don't feel* very well. I *wonder* if you *could* write it for me? 13. Dixon was a bit disappointed, he *was feeling/felt* none of the pleasurable excitement he *had expected*. 14. We *will come* for you when we *want* you. Better lock the door. 15. I *have had* my eye on him ever since we *started*. *Have you noticed* anything odd about him? 16. He was not a cruel man by nature, and *was* secretly a little ashamed of the part he *had been playing* during the last month.

Ex. 18, p. 445

1. «Как ты?» — спросила она. «Спасибо, хорошо. Я работал». 2. Я разговаривал с директором о неделе открытых дверей, которую будут проводить в колледже в конце семестра. 3. «Мы все ждем, Нед», — сказала миссис Уэллс, сидя за пианино. 4. Я написал дяде и попросил его сообщить, когда он приезжает. 5. Уверен, профессор, вы понимаете, что в последние месяцы мое положение здесь меня беспокоит. 6. «Я очень надеюсь, что в субботу вы придете». — «Я тоже на это надеюсь. До свидания». 7. Он искал сигареты, когда в дверь вошел Джо. Может быть, он подслушивал? 8. Да, кстати, Кэррол, я все собирался сказать тебе, что Кристина все-таки придет на танцы и приведет с собой своего дядю. 9. Последнее время я чувствую себя очень подавленным. 10. «Как ты себя чувствуешь, Стив? — спросила его жена. — Надеюсь, уже не таким усталым?» 11. Когда обед подходил к концу, миссис Скарфилд спросила: «Вы сыграете с нами в бридж?», и он ответил: «Боюсь, сегодня вечером я не смогу». 12. «Извините, ради Бога, — сказал Глоувер, — я просто не знаю, о чем вы говорите». 13. О, да ведь это как раз то, что говорил я, только сказано другими словами. 14. При виде подноса, на котором стояли чашки, фляжка с горячительным и блюдо с печеньем, дрожавший Диксон приободрился. 15. Ах, мистер Диксон, а я-то все думала: когда же я увижу вас снова? 16. В тот вечер перед ужином он присоединился к Скарфилдам. «Через пару дней станет жарко», —

сказала миссис Скарфилд. 17. Полно, Дорис, мы говорили о тобой для твоего же блага.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

(TO UNITS ONE—THREE)

Ex. 19, p. 446

1. *were* — Present Subjunctive Mood, *should have* — Present Conditional Mood; 2. *were* — Present Subjunctive Mood, *should pay* — Present Conditional Mood; 3. *wouldn't find* — Present Conditional Mood, *tried* — Present Subjunctive Mood; 4. *hated* — Present Subjunctive Mood, *wouldn't be* — Present Conditional Mood; 5. *would hardly know* — Present Conditional Mood, *met* — Present Subjunctive Mood; 6. *had known* — Past Subjunctive Mood, *shouldn't have come* — Past Conditional Mood; 7. *should never have found* — Past Conditional Mood, *hadn't helped* — Past Subjunctive Mood; 8. *had left* — Past Subjunctive Mood, *would have caught* — Past Conditional Mood; 9. *had taken* — Past Subjunctive Mood, *would feel* — Present Conditional Mood; 10. *had read* — Past Subjunctive Mood, *would know* — Present Conditional Mood

1. Будь я молод, я бы провел отпуск в походе. 2. На твоём месте я не стал бы обращать внимания на её слова. 3. Ваза очень красивая. Вы ни за что не нашли бы ей пару. 4. Если бы ты терпеть не мог больных, ты бы не стал врачом, дорогой. 5. «Говорят, Фрэнк очень изменился». — «О да. Если б вы его сейчас встретили, вряд ли бы узнали». 6. Если бы я это знал, то не пришел бы. 7. Мы бы никогда не нашли этот дом, если бы нам не помог прохожий. 8. Если бы вы вышли из дома пораньше, то успели бы на трамвай. 9. Если бы вы принимали лекарство, которое прописал врач, вы бы сейчас чувствовали себя лучше. 10. Если бы вы прочитали рекомендованную мной статью, вы бы знали, как отвечать на такие вопросы.

Ex. 22, p. 447

1. If they *hadn't helped* us, we *wouldn't have found* the way. 2. If I *had* enough money, I *would buy* this cassette-recorder. 3. You *will be/ would be* able to speak English better if you *study/ studied* harder. 4. If she *were* older, she *would* understand you better. 5. If he *had been* in town yesterday, he *would have called* on us. 6. We *would have enjoyed* the play better if it *were not* so long. 7. My uncle *would be* able to help us if he *were* here. 8. I *would have done* the same if I *had been* there. 9. If I *had known* of your arrival, I *would have met* you. 10. If you *knew* what it is all about, you *wouldn't keep on* smiling. 11. If you *had gone* to the theatre last night, I'm sure, you *would have enjoyed* the play. 12. He *would be acting/ would have acted* differently if he *realized/ had realized* the situation. 13. If she *had come* earlier, she *would have been* able to see them before they went out. 14. Nobody told me about your trouble. I *would have helped* you if I *had heard* about it. 15. I *would have come* sooner if I *had known* you were here. 16. We *wouldn't know* anything about their plans for the summer holidays if Mario *had not sent* us a letter. 17. If you *had come* between two and three yesterday, you *would have found* him in. 18. If I *were* you, I *would have* a long walk in the park. 19. If I *could* help you, I readily *would do* so, but you know I can't. 20. I must be off now. If it *were not* so late, I *would stay* a little longer.

Ex. 23, p. 448

1. They *would do* it if they *could*. 2. If it *were* summer now, we *should go* to the country. 3. If he *wrote* to me, I *would write* to him. 4. She *would have found* the book if she *had opened* the bag. 5. It *would be* better if they *didn't come*. 6. I *would have given* it to you if you *hadn't been* out. 7. I *could knit* another sweater if I *had* more wool. 8. I *would study* Italian if I *had* more spare time. 9. If she *had followed* the doctor's advice, she *wouldn't have fallen* seriously ill. 10. The boy *wouldn't be shivering* if he *were* well. 11. If he *hadn't refused* my help, the work *would be/ would have been finished* today. 12. I *wouldn't have* a headache if I *hadn't had* a sleepless night. 13. Anne *could translate* this song if she *knew* French well enough. 14. You *would be* quite all right now if you *had taken* the medicine regularly. 15. If they *hadn't taken* a taxi, they *would have missed* the train. 16. If he *knew* her address, he *would write* to her, I'm sure. 17. The garden *would look*

beautiful if the trees *were not* bare. 18. He *wouldn't make* so many mistakes if he *knew* grammar well enough. 19. *Would you do it* for me if I *asked* you?

Ex. 24, p. 448

1. What would you say if I invited him for the weekend/to stay with us over the weekend? 2. What medicine would you recommend if the boy had a sore throat/were to have a sore throat? 3. If I could play the piano well, I should/would play for you. 4. The boy wouldn't be shivering if he weren't cold. Give him a cup of hot tea. 5. We would gladly stay another hour if it weren't so late. 6. If I had known that you had called me to reproach me, I wouldn't have come. 7. If you had taken the medicines prescribed by the doctor regularly, you would be feeling/would feel much better now. 8. If we had begun working early in the morning, we would have been through long ago. 9. If I were you, I wouldn't argue/wouldn't have argued with them. 10. If we had known it at the time/Had we known it at the time, we would have taken measures. 11. If everything were all right, he wouldn't look so worried/preoccupied. 12. I would have done it long ago if I had known that it was so important. 13. If you had followed/taken my advice, everything would be all right now. 14. If you hadn't refused his offer/proposal, we should have all gone/left together and shouldn't be hanging around here/sitting here alone. 15. I am sure that you would have been able to do it without my help if you had tried. 16. I might stay/I would probably stay if I were allowed to. 17. You would save/would have saved time if you went/had gone by train and by boat. 18. If you knew him as I do, you would trust him too. 19. I would have answered your question long ago if I could. 20. If you had called me, I would have dropped in yesterday. 21. If I were you, I wouldn't go there without an invitation.

Ex. 25, p. 449

Comments

a) In sentences 1 and 7 the action of the object subordinate clause is either simultaneous with that of the principal clause (the wish-clause) or follows it, so the Present Subjunctive (the non-factual Past Indefinite) is used.

In complex sentences 2—6 and 8 the action of the object subordinate clause precedes that of the principal wish-clause,

hence the use of the Past Subjunctive (the non-factual Past Perfect).

b) In complex sentences 1, 7, 8 the action of the subordinate clauses of unreal comparison is simultaneous with that of the principal clauses, so the Present Subjunctive Mood (the non-factual Past Indefinite) is used in the subordinate clauses.

In complex sentences 4, 6, 9, 10 the Present Subjunctive Continuous (the non-factual Past Continuous) is used in the subordinate clauses of unreal comparison because their imagined actions serve as a background for the actions of the principal clauses.

In sentence 3 the Past Subjunctive (the non-factual Past Perfect) is used in the subordinate clause of unreal comparison because its imagined action precedes that of the principal clause.

In sentences 2 and 5 the Past Subjunctive Continuous (the non-factual Past Perfect Continuous) is used in the subordinate clauses of unreal comparison because their imagined actions went on for some time up to the moment when the actions of the principal clauses took place.

c) In sentences 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8 the Present Subjunctive (the non-factual Past Indefinite) is used in the subordinate clauses of unreal concession (1—4) and unreal condition (7, 8) because the situations refer to the present.

In sentences 5, 6, 9, 10 the Past Subjunctive (the non-factual Past Perfect) is used in the clauses of unreal concession (5) and unreal condition (6, 9, 10) because the situations refer to the past.

d) Sentences 1—6 are simple exclamatory sentences that express a wish which cannot be fulfilled.

Sentences 1, 2, 3, 5 refer to the present, so the Present Subjunctive is used.

Sentences 4 and 6 refer to the past, hence the use of the Past Subjunctive.

Translation

1. Ты был очень добр к тому иностранцу, Дик. Хорошо бы/ Хотелось бы его увидеть. (Жаль, что мы не можем с ним встретиться.) 2. Дора жалела, что не вынула книгу из чемодана до отхода поезда. 3. Это хорошая мысль. Жаль, что я не подумал

об этом раньше. 4. Он кивнул ей и торопливо направился к своей комнате. Жаль, что она его видела. Жаль, что она вообще там оказалась. 5. Он подумал, что было бы куда лучше, если бы Милдред к нему не обращалась. 6. Это была отличная мысль. Жаль, что она не пришла в голову мне самому. 7. Хотелось бы мне быть в этом уверенным. 8. Неужели вам не жаль, что вы не явились раньше?

б) 1. Казалось, ему хотелось выговориться, но он боялся сказать что-нибудь обидное. 2. Теперь я припоминаю, что он тотчас же побледнел и начал задыхаться, как будто только что долго бежал. 3. Под глазами у нее залегли тени, как будто она не спала всю ночь. 4. Внезапно он улыбнулся, и голос его изменился, словно он желал рассказать какую-то тайну. 5. У нее был такой довольный вид, как будто она весь день ждала этой минуты. 6. Хью был удивлен и раздосадован, и к тому же продрог, как будто температура в комнате все время опускалась. 7. А вы ведите себя так, словно мы с вами знакомы. 8. Ты теперь уже почти взрослый, и я буду говорить с тобой как со взрослым. А ты должен мне в этом помочь. 9. Они пристально глядели друг на друга в безмолвном доме, и казалось, что они прислушиваются к чьим-то отдаленным шагам. 10. Во всем его поведении чувствовалась какая-то странная осторожность, как будто он втайне вынашивал некий план.

с) 1. Даже если бы вы только подумали, что я могу быть вам полезен, я и то был бы очень рад, я был бы просто счастлив получить разрешение остаться. 2. Пусть это даже было бы правдой — зачем об этом говорить? 3. Я бы добрался туда, даже если бы мне пришлось всю дорогу идти пешком. 4. Даже если бы вы дважды попросили его не делать этого, он бы все равно сделал это опять; он мальчик упрямый. 5. Вы бы не смогли связаться с ним, даже если бы попытались: его не было в городе. 6. Если бы мы вовремя получили информацию, мы могли бы предотвратить катастрофу. 7. «Видишь ли, — сказал Рэндал, — я бы не пошел, если бы тебе этого не хотелось». 8. Думаю, было бы естественно, если бы вы к ним присоединились. 9. «Вот бы знать: было бы все по-другому, если бы мама не умерла?» — подумала она. 10. Кто-нибудь обязательно бы заметил, если бы ее там не было.

d) 1. Если бы только отец был жив! 2. Если бы это было правдой! 3. Если бы (только) я мог в это поверить! 4. Если бы только он рассказал тебе всю историю с начала до конца! 5. Если бы (только) она была с нами! 6. Если бы только я не упомянул его имени! Как я мог сделать такую глупость!

Ex. 26, p. 450

1. I don't know how to address him. I wish I *knew* his name. 2. I feel as if my head *were* on fire. 3. If only I *had known* earlier, I *would have sent* you a telegram. 4. My wife says she wishes I *were* a thousand miles away. 5. He felt as if he *were floating* in the air. 6. He stared at me as if I *had asked* him something very odd. 7. At that moment she wished she *hadn't sent* for him. 8. If I *had told* you, you might have thought it was my choice. 9. Even if it *were* twice as dangerous, I *would carry out* my plan. 10. I wish I *had never seen* you. 11. Don't look at me as if you *had never seen* me before. 12. I think it *would be* natural if you *joined* them. 13. Remember her! As if I *could forget* her! 14. Then he suddenly said, "*Would you take me to Grayhallock if I asked?*" 15. Don't you think it *would be* rather nice if we *asked* her to stay on for a week as our guest? 16. "How I wish I *had been* there with you," I said with deep regret. 17. "Don't be sorry," she said. "I *should be* relieved if you *went*, if it *were* settled somehow." 18. Well, at any rate, the weather isn't going to present difficulties. It looks as though it *has set in* fine. 19. I *wouldn't be* sure of it if I *were* you.

Ex. 27, p. 451

Comments

1. It is a simple sentence containing an implied unreal condition. The Present Conditional Mood is used because the whole situation refers to the present. 2. This is a Type 3 complex conditional sentence. The Past Conditional Mood is used in the principal clause because the whole situation refers to the past. 3. This is a complex sentence with a clause of unreal concession. The Present Conditional Mood is used in the principal clause because the whole situation refers to the present. 4. This is a simple sentence of implied unreal condition with a *but for* construction. The Past Conditional Mood is used because the situation refers to the past. 5. This is a complex sentence which contains an implied unreal condition. The Present Conditional

Mood is used in the principal clause because its action refers to the present or future. 6. This is a compound sentence; its second clause contains an implied unreal condition. The Past Conditional Mood is used in it because the whole situation refers to the past. 8. This is a simple sentence containing an implied unreal condition. The Present Conditional Mood is used because its action refers to the present. 9. *We shouldn't have managed them alone* is a simple sentence containing an implied unreal condition. The Past Conditional Mood is used because its action refers to the past. 10. This is a complex sentence containing two subordinate clauses: a clause of real condition and an object clause. The latter: *Crawford would never have done so in similar circumstances* contains an implied unreal condition. The Past Conditional Mood is used here because the situation refers to the past. 11. This is a simple sentence containing an implied condition expressed by a *but for* construction. The Present Conditional Mood is used here because the situation refers to no particular time. 12. This is a compound sentence. Its second clause contains an implied unreal condition. The whole situation refers to the past, so the Past Conditional Mood is used. 14. The second of the two simple sentences contains an implied unreal condition. The Past Conditional Mood is used because the whole situation refers to the past. 15. This is a simple sentence containing an implied unreal condition. The Present Conditional Mood is used because the situation refers to the present. 17. This is a compound sentence; the clause that comes first contains an implied unreal condition. The situation refers to the past, hence the use of the Past Conditional Mood. 18. This is a conditional sentence of a mixed type. The action in the conditional clause refers to the past, hence the use of the Past Subjunctive, and the action of the principal clause refers to the present, hence the Present Conditional Mood.

Translation

1. На твоём месте я бы сейчас не волновался. Уверен, очень скоро все прояснится. 2. Я бы не удивился, если бы он нашёл какую-нибудь уважительную причину и не пришёл. 3. Но даже если бы вы были правы, я бы предпочёл действовать по-своему. 4. Если бы не моя помощь, он бы провалил последний экзамен. 5. По-моему, сейчас она была бы счастлива заполучить то, от чего тогда отказалась. 6. Сэр Хорэс задал мне один или

два вопроса, и с моей стороны было бы невежливо не ответить. 7. Несколько лет назад он не стал бы так говорить о Джейгоу. 8. Пойдем, Джесси! В одиночестве тебе будет еще хуже. 9. Я думаю о тех замечательных результатах, которых мы достигли, работая вместе. Поодиночке нам бы это не удалось. Жаль, что теперь мы действуем врозь. 10. Если ты нарушишь свое обещание, люди скажут, что в подобных обстоятельствах Крофорд никогда бы так не поступил. 11. Не будь пчел, не было бы и меда. 12. Она не желала даже смотреть в мою сторону. Взгляни она на меня хоть раз, я бы подошел и извинился. 13. Он очень спешил, и ему некогда было все обдумать. Иначе он нашел бы лучший выход из положения. 14. Но миссис Джейгоу не смогла в точности скопировать особенности речи леди Мюриэл. Говоря с мужчинами или о мужчинах, леди Мюриэл никогда не стала бы употреблять их университетские звания. 15. Лично я бы на это не согласился. 16. Они все были бы только рады тебя видеть. 17. Я бы ее выпроводил, но мне казалось, что ты хочешь записать ее речь с помощью этих твоих устройств. 18. Ты никогда никому не делал ничего хорошего. Если бы ты вел себя по-другому, у тебя сейчас было бы больше сторонников.

Ex. 28, p. 451

1. It would do you/him/her, etc. good to consult a doctor./ It would be good to consult a doctor. 2. It would be interesting to find out which of us is right: you or me. 3. It would be nice to have a swim/to go swimming in such hot weather. 4. It would be nice to have a cup of coffee. 5. It would be very important to learn his opinion of this matter. 6. It would do you a lot/a world of good to go in for sports. 7. She would be a good student if she weren't so often ill and didn't miss classes. 8. We would be glad to help you, but we are very busy today. 9. I think she wouldn't have got angry if you hadn't made so much noise. 10. I would go to the south but my doctor advised me against it. 11. I would go to the cafeteria with you, but my doctor has prescribed me a diet. 12. You did well to follow the doctor's advice, or else/otherwise you would surely have gone down/fallen ill with pneumonia. 13. On Sunday it rained all day, otherwise we should have gone to the country. 14. He says there's something wrong with his heart, otherwise he would have taken part in the competition. 15. But for my headache I would join you/keep you company.

16. He wouldn't have recovered so quickly if he hadn't been taken good care of in hospital./He wouldn't have recovered so quickly but for the good attendance in hospital. 17. But for his good health/If it weren't for his good health he wouldn't have been able to endure all the hardships of the expedition. 18. But for your pills, doctor, I would have had to go to hospital. They have worked a miracle. 19. If you had dressed more warmly yesterday, you wouldn't be coughing and sneezing now. 20. If you knew the symptoms of measles, you would have understood right away/at once that it wasn't scarlet fever. 21. He would have come with us but for his sudden illness. 22. What a strange woman! She wouldn't consult a doctor even if she felt ill. 23. Even if he had been operated on, it wouldn't have done him any good./Even he were operated on, it wouldn't make any difference. 24. It was late, and it would have been natural if the sick child had fallen asleep, but he was awake and his eyes were fixed on the foot of the bed. 25. How would you answer this question? 26. What would you do in my place? 27. I would advise you to go to a dentist. 28. I would never have done it without your help.

Ex. 29, p. 452

1. I knew he *was* silly, but I *did not believe* that he *was* as silly as that. 2. I wish he *had been* a bit stronger against Crawford. 3. After a moment's silence he *broke out*: "*Would it be* a nuisance if I *begged* a cup of tea in your rooms?" 4. You must thank him, not we. Without him we *wouldn't have achieved* any success. 5. I wish she *didn't look* so pale. 6. "If I *were* Crawford, I *would thank* Winslow much," said Chrystal. 7. I *would give* a good deal for that assurance! 8. "Are you glad to see me?" — "You're funny, Dick! As if you *didn't know*!" 9. If I *thought* as you do, I *would feel* miserable. 10. Mr. Dennant's glance rested on Shelton and quickly fell down to the ground as though he *had seen* something that alarmed him. 11. I wish you *had shown/would show* more sign of not liking it in practice. 12. I can't for the life of me understand why you didn't wait until they decided. I *had expected* you to discuss it with me. 13. When Hilary opened the door, the stranger made a quick movement forward, almost as if he *were* going to stick his foot hurriedly into the opening. 14. Her voice sounded as though something *had offended* her. 15. I wish I *could* play tennis as well as you do. 16. He looked up sharply as if he *had made* a dangerous remark. 17. I may travel out with Uncle,

but it *would be* such fun if you *came*. 18. He saw it as clearly as though it *were* before his eyes. 19. But for your friendship I *would feel* lonely here.

Ex. 30, p. 453

1. I wish he hadn't gone away. 2. She wished it were night instead of day, so that no one could see how miserable she was. 3. I wish she were my sister, I would love her very much. 4. I wish it were Sunday today, I would take the kids to the zoo. 5. We wished we hadn't left him alone. 6. I wish you believed me. I have never deceived you. 7. He wished he hadn't left so early. 8. Randall was so angry as though it were his own money that had been spent. 9. Don't look at me as if you had never seen me before. 10. She looks as though she doesn't/didn't know what to say. 11. Even if we had received the telegram yesterday, it would have been too late anyway. 12. Even if I were/had been very busy, I would find/have found the time to visit her in the hospital just the same. 13. If only he weren't so lazy! 14. Oh, if only I were sure that it was so! 15. If it hadn't been for/But for the bicycle, he wouldn't have caught up with us. 16. But for your carelessness there would have been no accident. 17. But for his bright mind we wouldn't have done the translation so quickly and wouldn't be free now. 18. If I had known that you would come, I should have stayed at home. 19. I would go with you, but my little brother is ill, and I've got to go to the chemist's. 20. It would have been important then, but it isn't now. 21. It would do him good to sleep with an open window the whole year round.

Ex. 31, p. 454

Comments

1—3. In these sentences the Old Present Subjunctive is part of set phrases which are a survival of the old use.

4, 8. The Old Present Subjunctive is used to express a wish. In both sentences it can be replaced with *should* + *Infinitive* or the Indicative Mood. Using the latter would make the sentences less emphatic. Such a use of the Old Present Subjunctive is very common in the USA where it is preferred to *should* + *Infinitive*. That also goes for sentence 7 in which the Old Subjunctive is used to express insistence.

5. After *whoever*, *whatever*, etc. one can also use *may* + *Infinitive* or the Indicative Mood. *May* suggests ignorance or

uncertainty and has other limitations which makes it impossible to use in most sentences, containing the aforementioned words ending with *-ever*. The Old Present Subjunctive sounds rather high-flown and more often than not even unnatural, so the best and safest choice is the Indicative Mood.

6. After *see (to it) that, make sure that, check that* and *take care that* one can use either the Old Present Subjunctive or the Indicative Mood, namely the Present Indefinite if the situation refers to the present and the Past Indefinite if it refers to the past.

Translation

1. «Да будет так», — ответил Стирфорд. 2. Пусть тебе сопутствует успех! 3. Наступила среда, и он был исполнен решимости уехать ближе к вечеру, что бы ни случилось. 4. Я приговариваю подсудимого к повешению. 5. Кем бы он ни был, он должен быть наказан. 6. Позаботься о том, чтобы, когда он придет, здесь были все. 7. Он настаивал на том, чтобы мальчик соблюдал постельный режим. 8. Рабочие требовали, чтобы им повысили зарплату.

MODAL VERBS

(TO UNITS FOUR—SIX)

can, may

Ex. 32, p. 455

1. Он устроился таким образом, чтобы видеть, что происходит вокруг. (Indicative) 2. О, если бы я могла снова стать цветочницей! (Subjunctive) 3. Если бы я думал так, как вы, я бы ни дня больше не смог остаться в Индии. (Subjunctive) 4. Думаю, я не смогла бы произнести ни единого звука старому, даже если бы попыталась. (Subjunctive) 5. О Густав, нам так хочется пить. Ты не мог бы принести нам имбирного пива? (Subjunctive) 6. Я не умею рассказывать истории и никогда не умела. (Indicative) 7. Шелтон не смог сдерживать улыбки: леди Бонингтон на месте бедняков! (Indicative) 8. Но он не мог повернуться и уйти и не представлял себе, как это можно сделать. (Indicative) 9. Как ты мог совершить такую глупость, Генри? (Indicative) 10. Как вы думаете, к вечеру вы смогли бы

закончить? (Subjunctive) 11. Она не смогла бы нанести Джеймсу более сокрушительного удара, даже если бы сказала: «Он улетел на Марс». (Subjunctive) 12. Чем он мог ей помочь? (Indicative) Если бы только его отец был жив! Тогда он смог бы сделать так много! (Subjunctive) 13. Он не мог ни двигаться, ни говорить. (Indicative) 14. Что ты мог знать о подобных вещах? (Indicative) 15. Неужели вы в это верите?/Вы могли бы в это поверить? (Subjunctive) 16. Неужели он врет? (Subjunctive) 17. Интересно, что бы это значило? (Subjunctive) 18. Он не был бы так уверен, если бы не знал этого наверняка. (Subjunctive) 19. Как вы думаете, вы смогли бы командовать армией? (Subjunctive) 20. Горы были далеко, и был виден снег на их вершинах. (Indicative)

Ex. 33, p. 455

Comments

In sentences 1, 2, 3, 6, 8, 9 and 24 *can* and *could* express physical or mental ability or inability to perform the action.

In sentences 4, 5, 7, and 25 *can* serves to express possibility due to circumstances.

In sentences 10—14 and 26 *can't* and *couldn't* express incredulity. The use of *couldn't* instead of *can't* in sentence 14 makes the statement less categorical.

In sentences 19—23 *can* expresses permission.

In sentences 15—18 *can* and *could* are used to express surprise. *Could* in sentence 17 implies more uncertainty than *can* would.

Translation

1. Я не могу точно выразить то, что хочу сказать. 2. Он не мог отвести от нее глаз. 3. Она изумительно играет на пианино. 4. Если хотите, мы можем уехать сегодня. Мы можем легко успеть на поезд, который отходит в три сорок. 5. Небо уже прояснилось, Клара, дождь перестал. Мы можем дойти до остановки автобуса пешком. 6. Вам не под силу забрать назад те знания, которые вы мне дали. 7. Я дам вам знать, чтобы вы могли туда приехать. 8. Он был так слаб, что не мог оторвать голову от подушки. 9. Ему уже намного лучше, и он может ходить без моей помощи. 10. О, не может быть! 11. Что? Фредди, тут должно быть хотя бы одно такси. Наверное, ты плохо искал. 12. Не может быть, чтобы он сегодня утром отнес ко-

робку навверх. 13. Не может быть, чтобы Энн имела это в виду. Это на нее не похоже. 14. Он не мог сделать это в одиночку. Уверен, кто-то ему помогал. 15. Неужели вы верите этой девушке? Неужели это правда? 16. «Неужели он мой сын?» — подумала она. 17. Неужели она это сделала, не посоветовавшись со мной? 18. Неужели все действительно так плохо? 19. Здесь так пахнет гарью, папа. Можно, я спущусь вниз и посмотрю? 20. Джеймс, ты можешь отвести/отнести Агату вниз/на первый этаж? 21. Можете подождать на кухне. 22. Сдачи не надо. 23. Можешь взять мой второй зонтик. 24. Сделанного не воротить. 25. Уже ничего нельзя сделать, слишком поздно. 26. Я не верю ни единому его слову. Он наверняка узнал эту новость раньше нас.

Ex. 34, p. 456

1. Have you a friend whom you *could/can trust*? 2. What *can* Freddy *be doing* all this time? He has been gone for twenty minutes. 3. He *cannot have seen* me. I came when he had gone. 4. I am not a person who *could tell* a lie. 5. How *could* you *make* such a mistake as to suppose that I was younger than you? 6. Surely you *could have done* it before. What have you been doing all this morning? 7. Say what you like, but the work *can't be done* in two days. 8. Mr. Fenwill's house was built on the top of the hill and *could be seen* from afar. 9. I *can't have slept* two hours, I still feel tired. 10. He *can't be* her father; he is too young. 11. They *can't hear* us. Knock again. 12. If you had asked me for money, I *could have lent* you some. 13. He *could have told* me the answer, but he refused to. 14. *Can* he still *be sleeping*? It seems to me they simply don't want us to see him. 15. I *can't swim* — I wish I *could*. 16. She has a university education and *could have made* a career for herself if she hadn't married. 17. You *can't have forgotten*. I don't believe you.

Ex. 35, p. 456

1. He *can't have told* a lie. It isn't like him. 2. Can it be true that he has become a famous actor? 3. They *can't be* brother and sister. They aren't alike at all. 4. It *couldn't be* true. (I don't think it's true/It's unlikely.) Anyway we *can't prove* it. 5. I wonder what you *could suggest* under/in such circumstances. 6. He *couldn't have made* such a mistake. He's an experienced engineer. 7. Can it be just his imagination? 8. But for him we *could have*

lost our way. It was already getting dark. 9. If I were you,/In your place I wouldn't trust him, he could deceive you. 10. He couldn't be so young. I have noticed some grey hairs on his temples. 11. You can easily recognize him by his noble aquiline profile. 12. They can't have noticed us. We were rather far from them. 13. They can't have failed to notice us. We were quite near. 14. You can't judge a person by/from appearance. Appearances are deceptive. 15. Could it be little Lizzie? How she has grown! 16. "Can I see the manager?" — "Unfortunately not. He is coming at twelve today." 17. Could you give me your notes on condition that I return them the day after tomorrow? 18. She hopes that she can avoid the operation. 19. One could see that he was excited though he tried to look carefree. 20. "Can I talk to you for a moment?" — "Well, what's the matter?" 21. It can't be done so quickly. You'll have to wait. 22. He couldn't read Latin and didn't understand what the doctor had prescribed him. 23. Can't you explain to your parents that you can't go? 24. At first he couldn't feel his pulse and decided that his heart had stopped beating. 25. He can't have said it. He isn't as stupid as you think. 26. I could have done it long ago if I had known that it was so urgent. 27. I don't believe that there are diseases that can't/couldn't be cured. We just don't know how to cure them. 28. It can't be true.

Ex. 36, p. 457

Comments

In sentences 1—13, 21, 22, 23 and 24 *may* and *might* express supposition implying uncertainty.

In sentences 5, 6, 9, 10 and 13 the use of *might* instead of *may* implies greater uncertainty. If one uses *may* in this kind of sentences, that shows that one is about 50 per cent sure, if one chooses *might*, that means that they are only some 30 per cent sure that their supposition is correct. In sentence 11 *might* + *Perfect Infinitive* belongs to the Past Conditional Mood, and the sentence itself is a Type 3 conditional one. Sentence 12 is a mixed type conditional sentence, and *might* + *Simple Infinitive* belongs to the Present Conditional Mood. In sentence 21 *might* and not *may* is used because of the Sequence of Tenses.

In sentences 14—16 and 26 *may* and *might* are used to ask for or give permission. In sentence 16 *might* is used instead of *may* to comply with the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.

In sentence 17 *might* + *Simple Infinitive* expresses a reproach for the non-performance of the action in the present and in sentences 18 and 19 *might* + *Perfect Infinitive* expresses a reproach for the non-performance of the action in the past.

In sentence 20 *might* serves to express possibility due to circumstances.

Sentence 25: in complex sentences with clauses of concession introduced by *however, wherever, whatever*, etc. the Indicative Mood is usually used in both the principal and the subordinate clauses, but in literary style *may/might* + *Infinitive* sometimes occurs in the clauses of concession to emphasize the supposition.

Translation

1. Может быть, это правда, а может, и нет... Я этого не знаю, да и знать не хочу. 2. «Старый актер был пьян, — подумал он. — Однако в том, что он сказал, возможно, есть доля правды». 3. Возможно, причина их отказа присоединиться к нам кроется именно в этом. 4. Возможно, когда-нибудь вам понадобится друг. 5. Думаю, мы могли бы стать хорошими друзьями. 6. Думаю, сэр, что она, быть может, приходится Мерси сестрой. 7. Может быть, она встречалась с ним у своего дяди. 8. Возможно, они еще не вернулись. Давай позвоним им и выясним. 9. Не исключаю, что она, быть может, будет рада его видеть, но я в этом не уверена. 10. Все еще остается риск, что он таки придет. 11. Сомс почувствовал, что если бы при нем было оружие, то он, пожалуй, пустил бы его в ход. 12. Не будь он болен, ему, вероятно, грозила бы куда большая опасность. 13. Он знал, что увидит еще до того, как посмотрел, но его поддерживала смутная надежда на то, что он, быть может, ошибается. 14. Мистер Дулитл, можно мне прийти? Мне бы очень не хотелось пропустить эту свадьбу. 15. Позвольте поинтересоваться: у вас есть претензии к тому, как с вами обращаются/как вас здесь лечат? 16. Мистер Хиггинс позволил мне прийти. 17. Думаю, ты мог бы работать и поусерднее! 18. Холли, конечно же, вполне могла бы рассказать ему все это и раньше. 19. Право же, мама, ты могла бы избавить Фредди от этого. 20. Его можно каждый вечер увидеть в клубе. 21. Больше всего я страдала от того, что окружающие могут догадаться о моем состоянии. 22. Давайте отойдем немного дальше. Боюсь, нас могут услышать в доме. 23. Возможно, он оставит все как есть. 24. Надеюсь, что твоя мечта исполнится. 25. Сколько бы

он ни работал, ему не удастся догнать группу после того, как он так серьезно и долго болел. 26. Можно мне иногда разговаривать с вами? Я знаю, что умной меня не назовешь, но я постараюсь не быть скучной.

Ex. 37, p. 458

1. Let's wait a little. He may/might come yet. 2. He may/might not know anything about it. 3. A lot of things may seem unusual in a foreign country. 4. My question may/might puzzle you, but I want to ask it anyway. May I? 5. "Auntie, may/might I take another lump of sugar?" Tom asked. 6. It may/might surprise you all, but I have received an invitation to their party. 7. We may/might stay at home or we may/might go to the cinema. 8. Call Nick, he may/might have already seen the new film. Ask him if it is worth seeing. 9. Really John, you might have explained to me in the very beginning how important it was. 10. If you have been to London, you might have noticed that it's a city of contrasts. 11. I don't know where she is, she may/might be in the garden or she may/might have gone to the library. 12. No one is answering the phone. He may/might not have come home from work yet. 13. I think he may/might not know all the details, but the main idea is clear to him. 14. It may be impolite, but I'll tell him not to come again. 15. If he hadn't run into/across us in the underground, we might never have seen him again. 16. I may come too, may I not?/I might come too, mightn't I? 17. They may well be waiting for us downstairs. 18. I'm afraid we may/might be late. 19. I hope we may/might meet your sister there. 20. They were afraid that they might be asked why Tom hadn't come with them. 21. However late you may come, I'll be waiting. 22. I've brought you a big box so that you may pack your books.

Ex. 38, p. 459

1. When you get there, tell them to wait. *I may/might/could* be a little late. 2. *I can* come at six. I'll be free by that time. 3. *Can* this old man be Tom Brown? He *can't have* changed so much! 4. None of us know what *may/might/could* happen before it is finished. 5. This *may/might/could* be a great idea. It *may/might/could* also be a trap in which England will perish. 6. I told them he *might* be in the garden. 8. Sh! She *may* hear you. 9. How strange! *Can* you believe that? 10. I haven't seen her for ages. She *might/could* be quite middle-aged by now. 11. Don't send him away. We

may need his advice. 12. I fear they *may* miss the train. They left rather late. 13. It *could/might* be seen that he was puzzled. 14. Why do what *may/might* never be needed? 15. People *may* chatter about her, but they don't know anything definite against her. 16. He *cannot* have thought of this himself. Who suggested it to him? 17. He *might/may/could* be a medical student though I'm not sure. 18. But what more he *may/might/could* have said I don't know for I left. 19. You *might* tell me what he said! I have a right to know. 20. Miss Carter *may/might/could* have gone to the school to call on Mr. Everard. 21. Then he found that he *could* not stay in bed. 22. I *cannot* swim. I expect you *can*. Everyone *can* except me. 23. You *might* have warned me beforehand! 24. He *can't* have said that. I don't believe you. 25. It was a year or two ago, or it *may/might/could* have been three years ago. 26. She came to ask her mother if she *could/might* stay and dance a little longer.

Ex. 39, p. 459

1. — Вы еще приедете в этом году, мистер Уэллс?
— Может быть, если получится.
2. Может быть, это и не произошло бы, если бы ты отправил его к настоящему врачу, когда он только заболел.
3. — Меня бы это несколько не удивило, — сказал Берtrand, посторонившись, чтобы пропустить Маргарет.
4. На мгновение она подняла глаза, как будто ожидала этого вопроса, но он не мог понять, обрадована она им или встревожена.
5. — Пожалуйста, перестань говорить об этом.
— Я сожалею о том, что сказал. Я был дураком. Я вел себя как полный идиот.
6. По-моему, они вернулись раньше нас. Они могли взять/Может быть, они взяли такси.
7. — Почему ты мне не сказал?
— Я не мог. Пользы бы мне это не принесло.
8. Если бы не ваша доброта и чуткость, я бы не сумел сделать все это за столь короткое время.
9. Жаль, что у меня нет здесь машины, чтобы отвезти вас домой.
10. Будь она мужчиной, ее можно было бы назвать молодым способным бизнесменом.

Ex. 40, p. 460

1. Can/Could this be John Steerforce? Why, he is quite an old man, grey-haired and round-shouldered! 2. "I think she didn't want to talk to me." — "I wouldn't think so. She may/might not have seen you." 3. He can't have deceived them, he's an honest man. 4. Couldn't you guess where I had put the money? 5. He may/might/could know about it and may/might not want to tell us. 6. She can't have failed to find your house. 7. Can/Could the child be still asleep? It's high time you woke him. 8. You might have told me about it yesterday. 9. I would love to come, but I may/might/could be busy. 10. It may be true or it may be not. 11. Could you lend me three roubles until tomorrow? 12. I'll phone him, he may/might not know what has happened. 13. You'll have to hurry up, or you may be late. 14. I'll do all I can to help you. 15. Where can/could he have gone? 16. You could have done it yourself, you just didn't try. 17. Come up closer so that I may/can see you better. 18. Can you recognize him from/by his photograph? 19. I can't imagine what may come of it. 20. The news may already be known to everybody. 21. He can't have known about it. He would have behaved differently. 22. Who can/could have said such a thing? 23. He may/might/could have already told them everything. 24. Wait till he comes. He may/might explain to us what the matter is.

must**Ex. 41, p. 460****Comments**

Sentences 1, 5, 6: *must* expresses necessity.

Sentences 2, 3, 7, 8 express obligation or compulsion from the speaker's viewpoint.

Sentence 4: obligation. *Must I...* in a question usually implies that the speaker is unwilling to perform the action.

Sentences 7 and 8: obligation or compulsion from the speaker's viewpoint.

Sentence 9: emphatic advice.

Sentences 10—18: supposition implying very strong probability (supposition bordering on certainty).

Translation

1. Старикам необходима поддержка. 2. Человек должен отстаивать свои права. 3. Не надо думать, что это так уж лег-

ко. 4. Это обязательно нужно сделать до завтра? 5. Она должна трудиться с утра до ночи, чтобы заработать на жизнь. 6. После дня напряженного труда необходим отдых. 7. Он знал твердо лишь одно: он не должен/ему не надо встречаться с Антонией. 8. Ты прав. Я не должен/Мне не надо здесь останавливаться. 9. Право же, мистер Хиггинс, вы должны проявить благоразумие. 10. Дайте ему поесть. Он, должно быть, голоден. 11. Этот парень, должно быть, сделан из стали. Он никогда не устает. 12. Прелестное письмо. Наверное, бедный юноша писал его целый час. 13. Должно быть, теперь он уже старик. 14. Наверное, вы ее напугали. 15. Этот человек повидал и почувствовал вдесятеро больше моего, хотя он, должно быть, на десять лет моложе. 16. Я чувствовал, что скоро мой секрет, вероятно, раскроется. 17. Я слышу чьи-то шаги на лестнице. Должно быть, это она! 18. Судя по книгам и бумагам на его письменном столе, он, по-видимому, работал несколько часов.

Ex. 42, p. 461

1. There is most probably/evidently/very likely no one there. 2. He must have understood nothing and taken offence. 3. I don't think she remembers (Most probably/Evidently she doesn't remember) that she has promised to bring us a map of Moscow. 4. You must have been unaware/Evidently you didn't know that they had moved to one of London's suburbs. 5. She must have left the door unlocked. 6. I don't think you have ever met such an amusing boy as our Tom. 7. It must be difficult for you to believe it. 8. The children must have failed to notice that it had already got dark. 9. She must be unaware of it. 10. She must have very little experience/She must be quite inexperienced in translating medical articles from English into Russian. 11. It must seem improbable to you, but it's true. 12. He must have failed to/Surely he didn't recognize you in the crowd.

Ex. 43, p. 461

1. This medicine must be taken regularly. 2. Homework must be done in time. 3. Peace can be won. War is not inevitable. 4. The book may be put on the upper shelf. 5. The children may be allowed to go for a walk. 6. The matter must be discussed not later than tomorrow. 7. It can't be done without your help. 8. The matter must be looked into. 9. The magazine mustn't be taken

away. 10. The letter must be posted as soon as it has been written. 11. May the books and papers be taken away? 12. The dinner must be paid for. 13. Success must be worked for. 14. It can't be described. It must just be seen.

Ex. 44, p. 462

1. I have forgotten my own language and *can* speak nothing but yours. 2. We *must* go somewhere. We *can't* wander about forever. 3. But I think you *must* have told us this half an hour ago! 4. You *can't* see much of interest there. 5. I did not hear him return to the room. I *must* have been asleep. 6. You *must* have mistaken him, my dear. He *cannot* have intended to say that. 7. It seemed possible they *might* return. 8. It *cannot* have happened at Ainswick. 9. No good looking back; things happen as they *may*. 10. To be ashamed of his own father is perhaps the bitterest experience a young man *may* go through. 11. How *could* you let things slide like that, Dick? 12. I think you *may/might/could* be glad of some coffee before you start back to your hotel. It's such a cold night. 13. It was known — whispered among the old, discussed among the young — that the family pride *might* soon receive a blow. 14. And though he undressed and got into bed, he *could not* sleep. 15. You *mustn't* go out so late at night. 16. I think it *may/might/could* happen sooner or later. 17. I *may* come tonight, *may* I not? 18. "Somebody is knocking at the door. It *must/may* be John." — "It *can't* be John. It's too early for him to be back." 19. I don't know for certain, but he *may/might/could* have been a sailor in his youth. 20. They *may/might/could* ask me about him. What should I say?

Ex. 45, p. 462

1. If you think so, you are wrong. You *mustn't* think so. 2. The population of your city may be bigger, but what does that prove? 3. Now you are free and can do whatever you like. 4. There must be something in this. 5. He may not know/He may be unaware that we are going to do/see/visit the city sights right after breakfast. 6. They can't have come back from the zoo. They are there for the first time and may stay there for a long time. 7. If you spend so much time watching TV, you may have a headache. 8. The boy *may/might/could* have torn a page from the book you had left on the table. 9. If it is so, he must be punished. 10. You

can/may find him in the garden, I suppose. He must be playing tennis with Jim. 11. She may/might not know anything about it. You mustn't tell her anything either. 12. She says the trip to London is unforgettable/has made an unforgettable impression on her. She would never have thought that it could be so interesting to see the places she had learnt about from books. 13. We could have found the way to the hotel (by) ourselves if Boris hadn't lost the map of London. 14. Turn another page or two, and you'll see a photograph. Tell me if you can who it is. 15. "I wonder what he can/could be doing here so late." — "He may/might/could be waiting for Mary." 16. "What is that noise?" — "It must be the water running in the bathroom. Someone is washing." 17. If one could answer this question, it would have been answered long ago. 18. Who can/could have forgotten a key on my desk? It can't have been Jim. 19. Jim can't have forgotten the key. I saw him put it into his pocket. 20. Could you come a little earlier? It would be more convenient for/to me. 21. He stood there for a while thinking whether he could slink away/off (slip out unnoticed) and whether Minin would get angry or not. 22. I can't speak French, never could. 23. It must be difficult to master a foreign language, isn't it?

Ex. 46, p. 463

In all the affirmative and interrogative sentences *to have to* serves to express necessity or obligation imposed by circumstances and in the negative sentences it expresses the absence of necessity or obligation.

1. Боюсь, мне придется отослать его. 2. В камин уже положили уголь или вам пришлось сделать это самому? 3. Веревка была такой крепкой, что ему пришлось взять нож, чтобы разрезать ее. 4. Но стоило ли ложиться спать, если ему надо было вставать в пять утра? 5. Полагаю, мне придется поехать в Лондон, не так ли? 6. Вам приходится/надо рано вставать каждое утро? 7. Ему придется/Он должен заплатить мне до воскресенья. 8. Сколько времени вам пришлось там пробыть? 9. «Нам придется долго ждать каникул», — сказала она со вздохом. 10. Вам надо/Вы должны ходить туда два раза в неделю, верно?

Ex. 47, p. 463

1. Don't worry about that. You *must* do as you think best. 2. My mother was unwell, and I *had* to go to the chemist's. 3. I *must/have to* go and look at the dinner. 4. Yesterday's rain spoilt my hat completely; I *have to* buy a new one. 5. There was no one to help him so he *had to* move the furniture himself. 6. "Oh, hallo," she said. "I thought you *must* have gone home." 7. They didn't answer my first knock so I *had to* knock twice. 8. You *must* always come to me if anything goes wrong. 9. He was very sorry to think that he would *have to* part with it. 10. I had a sleepless night. I *must/have to/will have to* go and see the doc and get him to give me something. I can't go on like that.

Ex. 48, p. 464

1. a) He won't have to come again. b) Will he have to come again? 2. a) My sister doesn't have to go to work. b) Does my sister have to go to work? 3 a) They didn't have to go back alone. b) Did they have to go back alone? 4. a) You don't have to answer all these questions. b) Do you have to answer all these questions? 5. a) I won't/shan't have to go out after all. b) Will I have to go out after all? 6. a) He won't have to come on foot. b) Will he have to come on foot? 7. a) The students didn't have to read the whole book. b) Did the students have to read the whole book? 8. a) She doesn't have to come every week. b) Does she have to come every week? 9. a) He doesn't have to stay the night. b) Does he have to stay the night? 10. a) They didn't have to begin very early. b) Did they have to begin very early?

Ex. 49, p. 464

1. I gather you have read a lot in English, haven't you? 2. He had to wait at the station till it stopped raining, didn't he? 3. The work will have to be done before nightfall, won't it? 4. They usually have dinner at home, don't they? 5. She often has to go to the dentist's, doesn't she? 6. You have to go to school on Saturday, don't you? 7. They will have to do what they are told, won't they? 8. We have to begin before five o'clock, don't we? 9. As far as I understand, you had to stay there a fortnight, didn't you? 10. You look a bit tired, you've had a long walk, haven't you? 11. She has to clean the house herself, doesn't she? 12. They had to finish that last night, didn't they?

Ex. 50, p. 464**(1) A previously arranged plan:**

1. I am to see him tomorrow. 5. She is to return tomorrow.
7. He inquired when the secretary was to come. 10. Something must have happened. He was to have come at eight. 11. Jim reminded me that we were to be at the station not later than seven.
12. Which of you is to bring the magazines and newspapers?

(2) Instructions and commands:

2. You are not to communicate with anybody. 4. She said that I was not to leave the house. 6. He said that Tom was to apologize.
8. She says that I am not to lay the table before twelve o'clock.

In sentences 2 and 9 the speaker is not giving but asking for instructions. Both can be referred to (2).

Ex. 51, p. 465**Comments**

1. An order. 2. Asking for instructions. 3. Obligation (from the character's point of view). 4. Supposition implying certainty. 5. Prohibition. 6. Emphatic invitation. 7. Necessity imposed by circumstances. 8. Urgent necessity (from the speaker's point of view). 9. An order. 10. The Perfect Infinitive used with *was* to show that there was an arrangement, but it was not realized. 11. Prohibition. 12. Past obligation.

Translation

1. Я хочу, чтобы ты ее слушался. Ты должен в точности исполнять все, что она велит, и не шуметь. 2. «Ну так что мне делать с обедом? — спросила миссис Хэндфорт. — Переварить и пережарить или пусть остывает?» 3. Рэндал был взволнован. Ему казалось, что он должен позвонить ей немедленно, должен каким-то образом сегодня же увидеть ее. 4. Должно быть, в молодости Эмма была очень красива. У нее правильные черты лица. 5. «С нами шутки плохи», — угрожающе сказал полицейский. 6. Вы должны как-нибудь обязательно зайти и пообедать со мной. 7. Он проиграл все свои деньги на скачках, и мне пришлось одолжить ему пять фунтов. 8. Надеюсь, что не огорчу и не раздосаую вас, если буду говорить откровенно. Мне совершенно необходим/во что бы то ни стало нужен ваш совет. 9. Проснись, слышишь? Ты должен немедленно

проснуться. 10. «Значит, Фрэнк приехал?» — «Да, и весьма неожиданно. Он должен был пробыть там еще неделю». 11. Он все еще помнил рассказанное очень ясно и знал, что надо/что должен сделать. Он взял перо и своим аккуратным, твердым почерком написал заглавие нового романа.

need

Ex. 52, p. 465

1, 5. *Need* is an ordinary notional verb that serves to express necessity. 2. *Need* is an ordinary notional verb denoting the absence of necessity.

In all the other sentences *need* is a modal verb:

3. *Needn't* denotes the absence of necessity to perform the action. 4. *Need* implies that the speaker may think that there is no necessity to perform the action. 6, 8, 9. Absence of necessity. 7, 10, 11. *Needn't* + a Perfect Infinitive and *need never* + a Perfect Infinitive show that the actions were performed though they were unnecessary. 12. *Needn't* is part of a predicate in a clause of purpose. It is used to show that the person that is the subject of the principal clause views the action of the said subordinate clause as undesirable.

Ex. 53, p. 466

1. You *needn't have brought* your umbrella, as we are going by car. 2. You *needn't have watered* the flowers, as it is going to rain. 3. I *needn't have translated* it for him, he did it himself, he understands Latin. 4. I *didn't have to answer* the questions which saved me a lot of trouble. 5. I knew I *didn't have to lock* the door after me, but how was I to know you wanted to come out too? 6. I *didn't have to ring* the bell because the door opened before I got to it. 7. I *didn't have to help* them at all, they themselves knew what to do. 8. I *didn't have to write* him because the news was already known to him. He phoned me shortly afterwards. 9. You *needn't have listened* to him. His information was misleading. 10. You *needn't have bought* such a lot of flowers. We've already got more than necessary. 11. He *didn't have to get up* so early every day. It was only on that particular occasion that he did. 12. You *needn't have said* it if you didn't want to. We could have done without you just as well.

Ex. 54, p. 466

1. You *needn't* bring your books to class tomorrow, we are going to listen to a wireless programme. 2. I'm glad the lessons will begin later now. The children won't *have to* get up so early. 3. You *needn't/don't have to* learn the poem. You *must* only read it. 4. Children *mustn't* play with matches. 5. It was late, and they *had to* light a fire to cook their supper. 6. You *must* give it back to me before you go. 7. You *mustn't* be late for the concert. 8. I made a few mistakes, so I *had to* do the whole exercise again. 9. I *need* hardly say how important it is. 10. She *is to be* married next month. 11. You *mustn't* miss that film, it is extraordinarily good. 12. You *needn't* strike a match; I can see well enough. 13. Jim *was to* make a speech at the meeting, but he had fallen ill, so Tom *had to* speak instead. 14. You *needn't* bring any food with you tomorrow. I'll have enough for both of us. 15. We *are to* be there at 12 sharp. 16. We *didn't have to* wait long. A bus came almost at once. 17. You *must* learn the whole poem.

Ex. 55, p. 466

1. We *needn't* have left the house/left home so early, the train doesn't arrive for an hour. 2. We *needn't* hurry. (We don't need to hurry./We don't have to hurry.) We *needn't be/don't need to/don't have to* be there before 8.30. 3. You *mustn't* follow their example. It would be foolish of you. 4. I wonder if we have to bring the text-books. 5. I *didn't* have to lock the door, someone had already locked it. 6. If it freezes hard tomorrow, you won't need to/won't have to/*needn't* go to school. 7. You *needn't* worry, they will soon be back. They *must* have lingered near the Houses of Parliament on the Thames embankment: everything interests them here. 8. One *mustn't* forget that the East End is the home of those whose work keeps this huge city alive. 9. You *needn't* continue, I know that next you are going to say that among London's monuments of architecture the most popular one is Westminster Abbey built in the thirteenth century. 10. They were to meet on Waterloo Bridge at 6 p.m. 11. "What am I to tell our guests about my trip to London?" — "Describe to them the ceremony of changing the guard at the gates of the Tower." 12. She said what time we were to come and asked us not to be late. 13. We decided that the children *must* not go there alone. 14. One *needn't* mention that the Kremlin is a major museum and ancient monument. Everybody knows that. 15. I had to accept

this invitation although I was feeling off colour/out of sorts/unwell. I didn't want to offend my new friends. 16. He knew that he might have to stay there more than a month. 17. Ask the monitor who is to bring the head-phones to the Phonetics class today. 18. Yesterday we were to/had to visit Ann in the hospital, so we couldn't call on you.

ought

Ex. 56, p. 467

1. *Ought to* serves to give advice. 2. *Ought to* serves to express moral obligation. 3. Advice. 4. *Ought to* serves to express obligation implying desirability. 5. Advice. 6. *Oughtn't* implies that the speaker's action may have been undesirable. 7. *Ought to* + Perfect Infinitive shows regret that a desirable action was not carried out. 8. *Oughtn't to* + Perfect Infinitive is used to show regret that an undesirable action was performed. 9. *Ought to* is used to show that the speaker was feeling moral obligation. 10. Supposition implying logical probability.

Ex. 57, p. 468

1. I knew I *oughtn't* to open the letter. 2. I said you *ought to* finish your work before going out. 3. You *oughtn't* to eat between meals; it will make you fat. 4. You *oughtn't* to smoke so much; you are wasting money and doing harm to your health. 5. I *ought to* have taken these books to the library last week. 6. You *ought to* have told your guide that you wanted to go sightseeing all by yourself. 7. You *ought to* have waited till the lights were green before crossing the road. 8. You *oughtn't* to have crossed the road when the lights were red. 9. You *ought to* have seen the performance. It was wonderful. 10. If he starts at eight, he *ought to* be there by one o'clock.

Ex. 58, p. 468

1. Mother always tells me that I *must be/ought to be* more careful. 2. You *don't have to tell* him my telephone number, he knows it. 3. You *oughtn't to have said* that! See how distressed she is. 4. I don't want to do it, but I *must/have to*. 5. I *ought to* have taken those books back to the library last week. 6. You *ought to* have told our guide that you wanted to go sightseeing all by yourself. 7. But there was no other way out. I *had to* communicate with him. No one else knew her address. 8. Such things *mustn't*

be allowed. 9. You *needn't have written* such a long composition. The teacher only asked for 200 words, and you have written 400. 10. "Perhaps I *oughtn't to have troubled* you." He closed his lips tight. He was offended.

should

Ex. 59, p. 468

Comments

1. *Should* expresses obligation implying desirability. 2, 3. *Should* serves to express moral obligation. 4. *Should* serves to show that the action is desirable. 5. *Should* expresses regret that a desirable action wasn't carried out. 6. *Should* shows that the action performed is deemed undesirable. 7. *Should* serves to express regret that an undesirable action was carried out. 8. *Should* is used to show the desirability of the action. 9. The first *should* is used in giving advice, and the second serves to express moral obligation.

Translation

1. Можете ли вы показать мне хоть одну англичанку, которая бы как следует говорила по-английски? 2. Жена должна повиноваться мужу. 3. К тому же теперь, когда вы заняли более высокое положение в обществе, вам не стоит/вы не должны игнорировать старых друзей. 4. Надо преподавать им урок. 5. Должен признаться, что не предвидел такого поворота событий, хотя должен был предвидеть. 6. Вы узнали то, что я никогда не намеревался сообщать вам. 7. Ему не следовало это говорить. Он понял, что сказал не то, едва слова слетели с его губ. 8. Сестры долго спорили, надо или не надо звать Тимоти, чтобы он повидал Аннет. 9. «Вы должны приходить сюда часто, — сказал он Шелтону. — Вы должны приходить сюда часто», — повторил он. 10. «Вы должны закончить свою работу до того, как уйдете». — «Знаю, что должен».

Ex. 60, p. 469

1. Modal. 2. Auxiliary. 3. Auxiliary. 4. Modal. 5. Modal. 6. Modal. 7. Auxiliary. 8. Modal. 9. Auxiliary. 10. Modal.

Ex. 61, p. 469

1. I'm sorry that I kept you waiting, but I had to call home and say not to expect/tell them (my wife, etc.) not to expect me

for dinner. 2. Eventually/Finally we decided that we shouldn't stay there any longer and should go to the mountains. 3. You must dress in your very best, I want you to impress everyone as favorably as possible. 4. You should/ought to have done your homework properly. Then you wouldn't have had to ask such questions. 5. You needn't have waited so long. You should/ought to have left me a note. I would have done all you wanted. 6. They must be working in the laboratory. We/You/One shouldn't bother them. 7. "Why didn't you come yesterday?" — "I was to meet my first cousin at the railway station." — "Then you should/ought to have phoned so that we shouldn't wait for you." 8. Do whatever you like, I'm not going to stand in your way, besides I am to leave soon. 9. The party should/ought to be interesting. It took the students so long to prepare for it. 10. There's nothing funny in what he said. You should/ought to/must be more serious. 11. He will have to work here while the laboratory is being renovated (while the laboratory equipment is being repaired/is under repair). 12. You said it in/for fun, but she has taken offence. You should/ought to/must be more considerate. 13. It took us all day to prepare for their arrival. Everyone had to do something. 14. Such people should be/ought to be admired. 15. It didn't occur to me to talk to him though it should have. 16. Don't allow the children to play in my room. They will turn everything upside down, and you will have to tidy up. 17. You needn't have bothered the professor. I could have given you all the necessary information. 18. They should/ought to have kept him from such an unwise action. They are going to be sorry about it./They will wish they had. 19. I am sticking/keeping to the directions I have received. I know full well what I am to start with.

Ex. 62, p. 470

1. The emotional *should* is used to express annoyance. 2. The emotional *should* serves to express indignation. 3. The speaker believes that it is most natural for them to want their independence, hence the emotional *should*. 4. Surprise and annoyance. 5. *Should* is used in a set phrase meaning *Откуда мне знать?* which is used as an aggressive reply to a question. 6. Surprise and annoyance. 7. Surprise. 8. The emotional *should* is used in an object clause after an expression of surprise. 9. The emotional *should* is used in the object clause to show that the person in question is gloating. 10. Puzzlement. 11. A keen

interest. 12. Sadness. 13. Annoyance. 14. Surprise. 15. The emotional *should* is used to express the man in question's surprise at seeing the people he hadn't expected to see. It can be translated into Russian as follows: И как бы вы думали, кто подъехал к нему с двух сторон? Билл Деннант и сама Антония!

Ex. 63, p. 471

A. 1. Мне необходимо увидеть ее прежде, чем ее увидите вы. 2. Вполне естественно, что после войны следует восстановительный период. 3. «У нее шестеро детей, — сказала тетя Джулия. — Она правильно делает, что ведет себя осторожно». 4. Очень важно, чтобы вы выяснили, кому передают эти заказы. 5. Я хочу сказать, что, если мы собираемся создавать самолеты, работающие на дизельном топливе, нам совершенно необходимо иметь собственные месторождения магния.

B. 6. Он потребовал, чтобы работа началась немедленно. 7. Мы рекомендуем избрать его нашим делегатом. 8. Он приказал, чтобы все они вышли из дома. 9. Он предложил сократить рабочий день. 10. Врач настаивает, чтобы детей отвезли за город.

C. 11. Если она вдруг позвонит, я скажу ей, где вы. 12. Если вам вдруг понадобится что-нибудь еще, пожалуйста, нажмите кнопку звонка для вызова сиделки.

Ex. 64, p. 471

1. I'm suggesting that you *should* marry me, Midge. 2. She *must* be picking cherries in the orchard, tell her to come into the house. 3. "Well," said Emily with calm, "you *needn't* get into such fusses when we tell you things." 4. Is it necessary, do you think, that the police *should* know about it? 5. You *needn't* be afraid of him. He's a kind old man. 6. It is essential that he *should* be prepared for it. 7. Soft music filled the room. "That *must* be a gramophone record," thought he. 8. I propose that the prize *should* be divided. 9. Oh, I don't know. It's really rather odd that he *should* ever have been taking her to the Ball. 10. You *should* have seen that film when it was here last week. 11. It is strange that you *should* remember the place. 12. Why *shouldn't* I talk to Catherine? Do you think I'm not worthy to, or something? 13. Poor boy! He *must* have suffered so. 14. You

needn't answer all my questions if you don't want to. 15. Why *should* you say such disagreeable things? 16. Go upstairs at once. You *must* change your wet clothes. 17. It was only proper that Dora, who was young and healthy, *should* give her seat to that old lady. 18. I think I'll come on time, but if I *should* be late, please keep a seat for me. 19. He ordered that the gate *should* be locked. 20. She confiscated the morning papers so that the children *should* not see them. 21. You *needn't* wake up before seven o'clock. We'll start at half past eight. 22. "I was just wondering if my wife was here." — "No, she isn't here. Why *should* she be?" 23. You *shouldn't* work so hard after your illness. 24. Henrietta suggested to Gerda that they *should* go and look at the kitchen garden.

shall, will

Ex. 65, p. 472

In older English *shall* was often used with second and third person subjects in threats, promises and warnings or to express obligation. It is now very unusual.

1. *Shall* is used to express either a threat or a warning. 2. Promise. 3. Threat or warning. 4. Promise. 5. Obligation. The sentence is an order. 6. Promise. 7. *Shall* is used to ask for instructions. 8. Promise.

Ex. 66, p. 472

Comments

In sentences 1—3 *will* serves to express willingness to perform the action or is just a future auxiliary verb. 4. *Would* serves to express unreality and is part of a predicate in the Past Conditional Mood. 5. *Will you...?* is used here to express a casual request. The speaker is not concerned about politeness. 6. *If + will* is used to express a request. *Will* means *are willing to*. 7. *Would you mind + gerund* is used to express a very polite request. 8. A polite request. 9. *Will you* is used to give an order to someone the speaker has authority over. 10. Casual request. 11. Unwillingness to perform the action. 12. Consent. 13. *Wouldn't* is part of a Future in the Past predicate. 14. *Wouldn't* in this sentence is equivalent to *refused to*. It serves to express an emphatic refusal to perform the action.

15. *Would + like* serves to express a wish. The second *would* is used to make a request. 16. *If you would* means *if you are willing to*. It is used to express a polite request. 17. Emphatic refusal to perform an action in the past. 18. *Wish + noun/pronoun + would* expresses irritation caused by someone's refusal to perform the desired action. 19. Here *will* serves to express a supposition. 20. *Would* is used to show that the action is a recurrent one. 21. *Won't + Simple Infinitive* is used to show that the inanimate thing in question (*my lighter*) fails to perform its function.

Translation

1. Я дам тебе знать, чтобы ты смог там быть. 2. Я скажу тебе, что это такое. 3. Я извинюсь перед Маргарет за твое отсутствие. 4. Если бы это была девочка, я бы назвала ее в честь моей матери. 5. Выйди на террасу, посмотри на закат. 6. Прошу прощения. Боюсь, мне надо идти к жене. 7. Артур, не могли бы вы посмотреть, вернулась ли миссис Эрлин? 8. Я хочу, чтобы у меня была твоя фотография. Дай мне, пожалуйста. 9. Попросите их позвать мой экипаж. 10. Иди, полистай вон тот альбом с фотографиями. 11. Отныне я с тобой не разговариваю. 12. Нет, нет! Я вернусь, вернусь, и пусть Артур делает со мной все что пожелает. 13. Но я сказал ему, что не дам ответа до завтрашнего дня. 14. Ты не хотела приходить, хотя не желала сказать этого прямо. 15. Она просит, чтобы вы позволили ей сегодня во второй половине дня до пяти тридцати. 16. Джейн, я был бы очень рад, если бы ты сказала ему подняться наверх. 17. Я стучал несколько раз, но она так и не открыла. 18. «Не мог бы ты хоть иногда оставлять меня одну/оставлять меня в покое?» — сказала Дора. 19. Я полагаю, это будет последний бал сезона? 20. Он сидел на край кровати и часами наблюдал за ним. 21. Я не могу без курева, а моя зажигалка, нá тебе, не работает.

Ex. 67, p. 473

1. Asking for instructions. 2. Consent; *if you will* is equivalent to *if you are willing to*. 3. Promise. 4. Promise. 5. A future auxiliary verb. 6. *Will* serves to express determination and *shan't* is used to express a warning. 7. Promise. 8. *Won't* is used to show that the lifeless thing in question, namely the umbrella fails to perform its immediate

function. 9. Promise. 10. Invitation. 11. A future auxiliary verb. 12. Promise. 13. Unwillingness. 14. Invitation. 15. *Shall* is used to express a promise and *will* serves to express determination. 16. The first *will* expresses willingness and the second is an auxiliary verb expressing simple futurity.

Ex. 68, p. 473

1. It's going to rain. Look at the clouds. 2. You are to stay here till I come back. 3. I refuse to do what you tell me. 4. I promise you an apple after dinner. 5. What are you going to do now? 6. We hope to visit all the sights of London. 7. When do you intend to learn English properly? 8. This time next week I hope to be in St. Petersburg. 9. Would he like to listen to my singing, do you think? 10. Do you think, they mean to follow us all the way home?

Ex. 69, p. 474

1. "If I see him," I said, "I'll let you know." — "I *should* be very much obliged if you *would*," said Brown. 2. But I *shouldn't/wouldn't* lie about a thing like that, *should/would* I? 3. *Would* you drive us back to Campden Hill? 4. She *wouldn't* go in to supper with anyone but Winton. 5. If I were you, I *should/would* buy that hat, I like the colour very much. 6. It's ridiculous that you *should* conceal it from your mother. 7. If only Henrietta *would* make up her mind to marry him. 8. Why *should* I suffer more than I've suffered already? Why *should* I? 9. *Would* you care to come to tea with us? 10. He *wouldn't* look at her. He shook her off gently and gently said, "We'll see about that." 11. He pressed something into her palm. "Here's a shilling in case you *should* need it." 12. I wonder if you *would* mind me laying down my umbrella. 13. Why, oh! Why *should* I have to expose my misfortune to the public like this? 14. He *would* rather listen to the others than talk himself. 15. He ordered that the horses *should* be saddled. 16. She *would* sit for hours watching the ships. 17. I wish you *wouldn't* quarrel with Jessie. 18. He fully believed, had it been necessary, she *would* have been a genius at anything. 19. In order to make these demands effective we suggested that there *should* be no return to work today. 20. Why don't you want to stay another week in the country? It *would* do you only good.

Ex. 70, p. 474

1. He suggested that the meeting should be fixed/scheduled/slated for Friday. 2. We asked Mum if she would mind going for a drive into the country. 3. I would like you not to argue with Father. 4. Why should I help him? He can do everything himself, he's just lazy. 5. It is strange how inconsiderate some children should be to their parents. 6. It's quite natural that students should want to know as much as possible about the nation whose language they study. 7. Would you be so kind as to wait a bit? (Would you mind waiting a bit?) Your documents aren't ready yet. 8. We wanted to know some details but he wouldn't discuss anything with us. We were disappointed. 9. The doctor insists that she should stick/keep to the diet. 10. "Shall I bring you a glass of water?" — "Yes, if you would be so kind." 11. It is necessary that each member of the club should take part in the work of its sections. 12. If she should/Should she ask you about it, tell her that I will write to her about everything myself. 13. Would you like a little soup? It's very tasty. 14. As they were having tea with lemon/Over tea with lemon Soames said that there soon would be a war. 15. "Why should I do what I don't like?" — "It doesn't matter whether you like it or not. It should be done, and you know it." 16. I should read for half an hour or so before going to sleep. I've got an interesting book. 17. I should be greatly obliged to you if you would come at six. 18. How should I know what they are going to do? They never tell me anything. 19. Try as I would/No matter how hard I tried, the drawer wouldn't open. 20. The children should have stayed at home in such nasty weather.

REVISION EXERCISES ON MOOD AND MODAL VERBS**Ex. 71, p. 475**

1. If I *were* as young as you are, I *would/should have* a walking holiday. 2. Perhaps, she *wouldn't look* so bad if she *hadn't put on* so much weight. 3. He walked slowly as though it *ached* to move. 4. It *would be* natural for him to go to sleep. 5. It seemed as if all the bare trees, the bushes, the cut brush and all the grass and the bare ground *were varnished* with ice. 6. Daddy, if you *had been dressed* in checked gingham all your life, you *would understand* how I feel. 7. I *would like* to go hunting there, but I'm afraid I

should never be able to bear the cold. 8. He looked like an officer. Anyone *would have been proud* to be seen off by him. 9. He repaid me the half-crown as though it *had been borrowed* yesterday. 10. The girls *wouldn't have thought* so much of him if they *had seen* him then. 11. The young lady was evidently American and he was evidently English: otherwise I *would have guessed* from his impressive air that he was her father. 12. If England *swept away* her hedges and *put* in their place fences, the saving of land *would be* enormous. 13. Welch said it coldly as if he *were asking* to make some concession. 14. "I *should/would be ashamed* of myself, Clara," returned Miss Murdstone, "if I *couldn't* understand the boy or any boy." 15. If I *might* suggest, I *should/would say* that it *would be* better to put off the trip. 16. What *might* have happened or *would have happened* if Dora and I *had never known* each other? 17. My companion stumbled, the branch he had been holding snapped and he *would have fallen* if his hand *had not caught* another branch.

Ex. 73, p. 476

1. Even if the doctor *were* here, he *couldn't* help you. 2. If it *were* summer we *would/should have* a walking holiday. 3. If only he *avoided/had avoided* complications! 4. If only I *could* keep from thinking about my troubles! 5. If you *hadn't walked* bareheaded, you *wouldn't have caught* cold. 6. But for you I *should/would never have found* a way out then. 7. If I *could* forget everything! 8. If you *weren't* cold, you *wouldn't be shivering* from head to foot. 9. If this medicine *had not brought down* the fever, we *would/should have had* to send for a doctor. 10. If Anne *had passed* her exams in spring, she *would feel/would be feeling* a second-year student. 11. If he *had followed* all the doctor's instructions, he *would have avoided* pneumonia. 12. If the boy *had known* about the Centigrade thermometer, he *would not have thought* of death. 13. If it *ached* him to move, he *wouldn't be walking* himself. 14. If he *had heard* your words, he *would have got* offended.

Ex. 74, p. 477

1. I wish I *hadn't left/forgotten* the book at home. (If only I *hadn't left/forgotten* the book at home!) I *should read* this fragment to you. 2. I wish it *hadn't happened*. (I'm sorry it *happened*.) If you *had been* there, you *might have prevented* it.

3. I wish I could swim as well as you. 4. "I wish I hadn't left Capetown," Lanny thought. 5. We wished we had gone to the theatre with them. 6. I wish we had been told what to do in such cases. (If only we had been told what to do in such cases!) 8. I wish someone would call on us/drop in tonight. 9. I wish it hadn't been so cold and we had been able to walk longer. 10. Suddenly she felt so lonely that she wished she hadn't come there alone. 11. I wish you had followed/listened to the doctor's advice. You would be feeling/would feel much better now. 11. I wish you were interested in art. We could/might go to the exhibition together. 12. I wish you had turned on the radio in time. You would have enjoyed listening to this programme.

Ex. 75, p. 477

1. I wish you hadn't been so careless. It wouldn't have happened, if you had followed your friends' advice. 2. But for the moon it would be completely dark now. 3. He looked tired as if he hadn't had a rest for a long time. 4. I wish you knew his address, then we would be able to go and see him today. 5. I feel as though you had never left. 6. If I were you, I would have behaved more resolutely in such a situation. 7. It could/might have been done yesterday, but it is no use doing it (there is no point/use in doing it now). 8. I wish I had been with you when it happened. 9. "I wish my portrait could grow old and I could always remain young and handsome," said Dorian. 10. In your place anyone would have done the same thing. 11. He answered that his friend had not got the tickets though he might have if he had come to the box-office an hour earlier. 12. If there were no oxygen in the air, we couldn't breathe. 13. But for you/If it hadn't been for you, young man, I might/could have drowned. You saved my life. 14. If I were you, I would have these poems published/I would publish these poems. 15. I am sure that he will behave as though he didn't feel any pain.

Ex. 77, p. 478

1. Tell me what you *would do/would have done* if you *were/had been* in my place? 2. But for you I *would have left* long ago. 3. She speaks slowly as if she *were translating* from a foreign language. 4. I wish I *had never met* him. 5. People were standing around as if they *expected* something to happen. 6. I wish you *would be* like me for two minutes. 7. If Bob *had gone out* before,

we *would have noticed* him. 8. But for the underground the traffic in Moscow *would be* very heavy. 9. She is looking at me as if she *did not know* me. 10. That *would have interested* me some four years ago. 11. If I *had known* what it all meant, I *wouldn't have come*. 12. It seems to me that what she refused then she *would be* glad to get now. 13. My dear Algy, you talk exactly as if you *were* a dentist. 14. But for her words my life *would have taken* a different course. 15. At that moment she almost wished she *had not sent* for him. 16. She wrote with her own hand the letters which under normal circumstances she *would have dictated* to her secretary.

Ex. 78, p. 478

1. Why didn't you follow the doctor's advice? If you had taken the medicine he had prescribed, you would feel/would be feeling much better now. 2. I wish I had asked the doctor when I should take the pills/when to take the pills. 3. But for/If it weren't for this medicine, I would have awful headaches. 4. Even if you had no temperature, you had better stay in bed today. 5. He looks as if he has/had a cold (as if he had caught cold). 6. I would be (very) much obliged to you if you bought me nasal drops and something for my cough. 7. I wish the gym were in our building. We have to waste a lot of time getting there. 8. If you had used visual aids during the lesson, it would have been much more interesting and instructive. 9. He went on telling about his trip as though it bored him to death. 10. I wish I were an expert in this subject and could help you. 11. Even if he were/had been nervous before the performance, he wouldn't show/wouldn't have shown it. Astonishing self-control! 12. But for/If it hadn't been for the prompter, the actors would have felt less confident during the first night. 13. "Would you like to have a bite/a snack before going?" — "I would love a cup of coffee and a roll." 14. She behaved calmly as though everything were all right/as though all were well and nothing had happened. 15. The old man was speaking slowly as if he were at a loss for words. 16. I would prefer to have/I would rather have a holiday in winter. 17. I wish it had happened when you were here. You would have been able to prevent it. 18. If I had more time, I would go to exhibitions and museums regularly. 19. I do wish you had had time to look about the new districts of our city.

Ex. 79, p. 479

Comments

1. *Might* serves to express a supposition implying uncertainty. 2. *Couldn't* expresses impossibility due to circumstances, and *must* denotes an obligation that seems important to the speaker. 3. *Had to* denotes obligation imposed by external circumstances, and *was to* denotes obligation due to a previous arrangement. 4. *Are to* serves to express an order. 5. *Must* expresses a supposition bordering on certainty. 6. *Couldn't* expresses impossibility due to circumstances, and *wouldn't* expresses refusal to perform the action. 7. *Shouldn't* is used to express a supposition based on logical probability. 8. *Needn't* + a Perfect Infinitive shows that the action performed was unnecessary. 9. *Are to* is used to show that the action is planned. 10. *May* is used to ask for permission. 11. *Must* is used to express a supposition implying very strong probability. 12. *Can't* serves to show that the speaker believes it highly unlikely that the action actually took place. 13. *Should* is used to give advice. 14. *Ought to* is used to express advice. 15. *Couldn't* serves to express inability to perform the action, *have to* serves to express necessity, and *should* is used for emotional colouring. 16. *May* is used to express a supposition implying uncertainty, and *have to* serves to express necessity. 17. *Can't* is used to express prohibition, and *mustn't* is used to show an obligation the speaker feels very strongly about. 18. *Can* is used to express physical ability. 19. *Are to* is used to show that the action will take place in accordance with a plan or arrangement.

Translation

1. Если вы хотите познакомиться с большим количеством англичан, вам, возможно, захочется поехать в туристический лагерь. 2. Одно плохо — я не мог сдать экзамены весной и должен делать это теперь. 3. Моим родителям пришлось уехать в экспедицию — они, как вы знаете, геологи — а меня оставили вести хозяйство. 4. Вы должны принимать по столовой ложке этой микстуры три раза в день. 5. В этой суматохе я, должно быть, забыла сахарницу на полке в кухне. 6. Он не мог оплатить гостиничный счет, а кредита ему больше не давали. 7. Полагаю, этот заплыв займет у вас не намного более часа с четвертью. 8. Я зря торопился: он еще был не готов. 9. Сейчас у нас будет/должна быть лекция. 10. Можно, я посмотрю на фотографии? 11. Здесь, должно быть, какая-то ошибка.

12. «Он сказал, что из всех девушек, которые там были, ты самая хорошенькая». — «Не может быть, чтобы он говорил это серьезно». / «Ни за что не поверю, что он действительно так думает». 13. Если вы интересуетесь церквями и историческими достопримечательностями, вам стоит осмотреть Вестминстерское аббатство, парламент, собор Св. Павла и Тауэр. 14. Мне сказали, что стоило бы сходить в Британский музей. 15. Я и представить себе не мог, что, читая английскую газету, я буду вынужден искать главные статьи не на первых полосах, а в середине. 16. Если вы не будете беречься, у вас может произойти нервный срыв и вам придется лечь в больницу. 17. Тебе нельзя входить. Я не хочу, чтобы ты от меня заразился. 18. Микробы, вызывающие грипп, могут существовать только в кислой среде. 19. Я слышал, завтра будут отбирать игроков для всесоюзного матча.

Ex. 80, p. 480

1. One *can* never know what may happen. 2. You *might* have sent us a note at least! We waited for you the whole day. 3. Do you think you *could/can* command an army? 4. Well, your wives *might/may* not like the lady I'm going to marry. 5. Last winter he *could/might* be seen in the club any night. 6. What *can/could* Anne be doing all this time in the kitchen? 7. Whatever the reason *may* be, the fact remains. 8. She *may/might/could* have lost her ring herself, it *couldn't* have been stolen. 9. Who *can/could* have said such a thing? 10. Somebody *may/might/could* have given her my address. 11. Such difficulties *can* be easily put up with. 12. If only I *could* make him understand me properly. 13. I *could* have helped him, but I didn't receive his letter.

Ex. 81, p. 480

1. I *should have been preparing* for my coming exam yesterday, but I *had to look after* my sick sister. 2. He *doesn't have to get up* early. He begins working at 9.30. 3. "I *shouldn't have said* those wounding words," he reproached himself. 4. It isn't the sort of thing one *should discuss* with unknown people. 5. You *needn't worry* about money. I've got enough for both of us. 6. You *needn't have walked* all the way to the station. You *could/might have taken* a bus round the corner. 7. Sooner or later one *has to choose*. 8. Mother *had to get up and down* a good bit during the meal, fetching things back and forward. 9. I managed

to get there at half past twelve. But I *needn't have hurried*. They had already left. 10. Breakfast is often a quick meal, because the father of the family *has to get away* to his work, children *have to go* to school, and the mother has her housework to do. 11. If you are interested in historic places, you *should go* to Westminster Abbey. 12. She drew a chair near his — he wondered if he *should help* her with the chair — and sat down beside him. 13. They *had to knock* twice before the door was opened. 14. She *shouldn't have given* money to her boy. Then it wouldn't have happened. 15. She *had to conceal* her real feelings lest anyone *should notice* how unhappy she was. 16. You *needn't come* yourself. You *may send* somebody else.

Ex. 82, p. 481

1. He has bad/poor eyesight and has to wear glasses all the time. 2. You needn't ring (at the door). I've got a key. 3. The door can't have been open. I've locked it myself. 4. He may have already got the tickets and we may be able to go and see the first night on Sunday. 5. Can/Could you have forgotten about our meeting? 6. He should have/ought to have been more careful when (he was) doing/conducting the experiment. 7. What can he be doing there so long? He must have just fallen asleep. You know that he can fall asleep anywhere and at any time. 8. One should never judge by/from the first impression. It may (turn out to) be wrong. 9. You should read/ought to read this book. You ought to/should like it. 10. You shall certainly be informed should the need arise/if necessary. 11. Oh, how heartily you will wish you hadn't uttered/said those words! 12. He looks very happy: his work must have been approved. 13. Really, you might have warned me. Then I wouldn't have had to waste so much time. You should have pretended/ought to have pretended that you didn't see her limp/see that she was lame. 15. It must be very nice to travel in the south. 16. You may/might/could have just as well done it yourself. 17. He can't have sent the telegram. He didn't go out. He must have forgotten. 18. You needn't have informed them about it today. You might/could have waited till tomorrow.

Ex. 83, p. 481

1. He has insulted our family and he *must* suffer for it! 2. You *should* not have gone out without an umbrella in such rainy weather. 3. I'm afraid I *may/might* have sounded a bit unfriendly over

the phone. 4. "I *ought* to have told Soames," he thought, "that I think him comic." 5. We *might* live to their age, perhaps. 6. Here she *would* sit, sewing and knitting, while he worked at the table. 7. Why *should* you be different from other people? 8. "Good morning," said the girl. "I believe you *must* be Toby. Have I guessed right?" 9. If you *can* read without spectacles, and I believe you *can*, be so good as to read this letter for me. 10. Captain Steerforth, *may/might/could* I speak to you for a moment? 11. Anne felt she *could* not stand much more of this discussion. She said she *must* go on with her work and began to rise. 12. Why *should* one make trouble for oneself when one is old? 13. *Could/Would* you do me a favour and meet her at the station? 14. He was not old, he *could not/cannot* have been more than forty. 15. The day we *were to* start it rained worse than ever. 16. You *needn't* hurry. There is plenty of time. 17. Mother has fallen ill, so I *had to* change my plans. 18. We didn't know what to do; the key *would* not turn and we *could* not get into the room. 19. I *ought* not to have left Cape Town last night. I wish I had not. 20. "*Could/Might/May* I speak to Mr. Pitt, please?" — "I'm afraid he's out at the moment, *could* you ring back later?"

Ex. 84, p. 483

1. His name is Foster. You *may/might* have heard his name. 2. The face of the woman in a blue suit standing by the door seems familiar. I *must* have met her somewhere. 3. I *can't* find this record anywhere. *Can/Could* it have been broken? 4. I *shouldn't/oughtn't* to have said it to him. He *may* have taken offence. 5. Everything will be okay! Your daughter will surely recover! (Everything shall be okay. Your daughter shall recover.) 6. Yesterday you came back late. You *should/ought to* go to bed earlier today. 7. You *shouldn't/oughtn't* to have spoken to her like this. She *doesn't* deserve it. 8. It is necessary that every student *should* take part in this competition. 9. You *can't* harp on the same thing all the time! 10. The chairman suggested/proposed that all those present *should* air/give/voice their opinions on the matter. 11. You *won't* have to make anything up. You will be told what to do. 12. Have you never heard of him? Well, you shall! 13. Jane *couldn't* forget the day which was to have been/was to be her wedding day and which had ended so tragically. 14. I *don't* have to get up early now: school starts in the afternoon. 15. I *can't* have missed him. I was standing next to the door all the time. 16. He *needn't* have worked so late.

Some of the work might/could have been put off till today. 17. Can I offer you a cup of tea, doctor? 18. One/You shouldn't be so impatient. One/You should always consider other people's habits. 19. You must behave as though nothing had happened. 20. Do you often have to consult a doctor? 21. Would you be so kind as to help me open the suitcase? There's something wrong with the lock, it won't open. 22. He was to have come at five, we've been waiting for him for an hour and a half, but he still isn't here. Where could he be? 23. Why should we help him? He just won't work. 24. He sent her presents, but she wouldn't accept them.

■ NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB ■

(TO UNITS SEVEN — NINE)

The Infinitive

Ex. 85, p. 483

1. The Perfect Active Infinitive is used in the second sentence. The perfect form is used because the action of the infinitive precedes that of the predicate verb in the first sentence. 2. The Continuous Active Infinitive is used to emphasize the idea of the duration of the action simultaneous with the predicate verb. 3. The infinitive is used in its simple form because it expresses an action following the predicate verb. The passive form is chosen because the action is directed not from but to the subject of the sentence. 4. The action of the infinitive is prior to that of the predicate verb which though not mentioned can be easily guessed at: *I am glad...* Hence the use of the Perfect Infinitive. 5. The Continuous Infinitive serves merely to make the statement more expressive. One might just as well have used the Simple Infinitive in this sentence. 6. Priority of action: the action of the infinitive is prior to that of the predicate verb, therefore the Perfect Infinitive is used. It is passive because its action is directed not from but towards the subject of the sentence. 7. The action of the finite verb (*are*) and the infinitive (*to be taken*) are simultaneous, so the Simple Infinitive is used. It is passive because the action is directed not from but towards the subject. 8. The perfect continuous form of the infinitive is used to show the priority and

to express the duration of the action. 9. The Simple Active Infinitive (*to take off*) is used because its action follows that of the finite verb (*told*) and the other infinitive used in the sentence (*be heard*) is in the simple form because it is used in a subordinate clause of purpose. The passive form shows that the subject (*footsteps*) was the object of the action and not its doer. 10. The action of the infinitive is prior to that of the finite verb, hence the use the Perfect Infinitive. 11. The action of the infinitive follows that of the finite verb, so the Simple Infinitive is used. The infinitive is part of a Complex Object. 12. The Perfect Continuous Active Infinitive is used to show that its action began in the past and is still in progress at the moment of speaking. 13. The Continuous Active Infinitive is used to show that the action, expressed by it, is going on at the moment of speaking. 14. The Perfect Active Infinitives are used to express prior actions. The finite verb can be found in the wider context from which the sentence has been taken. 15. The infinitives are used in the simple form because their action is simultaneous with that of the finite verb. The first infinitive (*to be done*) is passive because its action is directed to its subject. The second infinitive is active because its action is directed from the subject of the whole sentence which though not mentioned in it can be found in the wider context from which the sentence is taken.

Ex. 86, p. 483

to have been done — to do, to be doing, to have done, to have been doing, to be done

to be spoken to — to speak to, to be speaking to, to have spoken to, to have been speaking to, to have been spoken to

to curl — to be curling, to have curled, to have been curling, to be curled, to have been curled

to be breaking — to break, to have broken, to have been breaking, to be broken, to have been broken

to have nodded — to nod, to be nodding, to have nodded, to have been nodding

to drive — to be driving, to have driven, to have been driving, to be driven, to have been driven

to be ruined — to ruin, to be ruining, to have ruined, to have been ruining, to have been ruined

to be rubbing — to rub, to have rubbed, to have been rubbing, to be rubbed, to have been rubbed

to land — to be landing, to have landed, to have been landing,
to be landed, to have been landed
to turn — to be turning, to have turned, to have been turning,
to be turned, to have been turned
to have been sleeping — to sleep, to be sleeping, to have
slept
to be got — to get, to be getting, to have got, to have been
getting, to have been got
to be running — to run, to have run, to have been running
to have been read — to read, to be reading, to have been
reading, to be read
to be said — to say, to be saying, to have said, to have been
saying, to have been said
to arrive — to be arriving, to have arrived, to have been
arriving
to be telling — to tell, to have told, to have been telling, to be
told, to have been told

Ex. 87, p. 483

1. I'm so dreadfully sorry *to have bothered/to be bothering* you in this stupid way. 2. He kept late hours last night, he may still *be sleeping*. 3. "She must *have been* very beautiful years ago," Maren thought. 4. It's a secret, and no one else must *be told*. 5. Goodbye. So pleased *to have met* you. 6. He's a talented engineer. He's supposed *to be working* at a new invention. 7. Oh, my Margaret, my daughter. You *should never have gone*. It was all your father's fault. 8. She seems *to have been working* at her project since spring and says she has still a lot *to do*. 9. I've just seen him passing the entrance door, so he can't *be working* at the laboratory as you say. 10. The next morning he seemed *to have forgotten* it all. 11. It ought *to have been done* long ago; at least before their leaving Blackstable. 12. She seemed at times *to be seized* with an uncontrolled irritation and would say sharp and wounding things. 13. You probably think that I must *have lived* a very gay life in France, but it wasn't so. 14. No words can describe it: it must *be seen*.

Ex. 88, p. 484

1. Maggie was sorry not to have warned her parents that she would be delayed. 2. I was glad to have seen another play by Ostrovsky. 3. The children were happy to have been taken to the circus. 4. This waltz made him remember his youth. 5. I would

like this text to be recorded once more. 6. He can't be still sitting in the reading hall. He must have already left. 7. She must be still staying at her friends' country house. 8. Can/Could she have got angry with you? 9. I am very glad to have seen them to the station. 10. I was so lucky/How lucky I was to see this performance! 11. Your next task is to carry out/to do this experiment in our laboratory. 12. Look at him! He must be trying to solve some important problem. 13. They couldn't have memorized my address. They have dropped in with my brother only once and purely by chance. 14. This sad event shouldn't/oughtn't to be mentioned in her presence. 15. They seem to be waiting for the instructions necessary to perform this task.

Ex. 89, p. 484

1. The teacher made me repeat it all over again. 2. You needn't ask for permission, I let you take my books whenever you like. 3. Will you help me (to) move the table? 4. He is expected to arrive in a few days. 5. You seem to know these places very well. 6. You had better make a note of it. 7. I heard the door open and saw a shadow move across the floor. 8. He told me to try to do it once again. 9. I'd rather walk a little before going to bed. 10. There is nothing to do but (to) wait till somebody comes to let us out. 11. You ought not to show your feelings. 12. Why not wait a little longer? 13. I felt her shiver with cold. 14. We should love you to stay with us. 15. You are not to mention this to anyone. 16. We got Mother to cut up some sandwiches. 17. Rose wanted them to stop laughing, wanted the curtain to come down. 18. I'll have to go there. 19. There doesn't seem to be anything wrong with you. 20. She helped me (to) get over my fear. 21. Look here, Jane, why be so cross? 22. He was seen to make a note of it. 23. What made you deceive me? 24. He was not able to explain anything.

Ex. 90, p. 485

1. Он не хотел смеяться тогда, да и теперь не имел такого желания. 2. Вы не обязаны ничего говорить, если не хотите. 3. Майкл много знал, во всяком случае так казалось. 4. «Давай-ка все это забудем, ладно?» — «Я рад все забыть, спасибо.» 5. Всякий раз, когда ей говорили помалкивать, она так и делала. 6. Это моя вина. Простите, я не хотел этого делать, это вышло нечаянно. 7. Я знаю, что мне надо было прийти к тебе и рассказать об этом, но я боялся. 8. «Я буду рад тебя видеть.

Приходи в любое время». — «Дорогой, ты же знаешь, как сильно мне этого хочется. Но я не могу». 9. «Вы не должны отсылать это письмо». — «Я непременно пошлю его авиапочтой из Порт-Саида». 10. Я не мог сделать то, что хотел.

Ex. 91, p. 485
(possible variants)

1. They say you read a lot. — Not so much as I used to. 2. Why didn't you invite them? — I simply didn't want to. 3. Will you write a letter to her? — Yes, if you wish me to. 4. Why can't you go with us? — I'm not allowed to. 5. I'm afraid you can't come. — I suppose I'll have to./But I'll try to. 6. I see that you haven't bought any oranges. — No, I forgot to. 7. You must take more care of it. — Yes, I ought to. 8. She says you are going to help her. — I suppose I'll have to. 9. Why didn't you dance with him? — He didn't ask me to. 10. You didn't sign your test paper. — I meant to, but I forgot.

Ex. 92, p. 486
(possible variants)

a) The infinitive as subject:

1. To punish the child for such a harmless prank would be unjust. 2. Just to look at her pretty, bright face was very pleasant. 3. To fire him immediately is the only thing to do. 4. To learn this dialogue by heart and dramatize it would be much more useful. 5. To decide which of them is right is not an easy matter.

b) The infinitive as predicative:

1. My hobby is to collect coins/stamps/matchboxes/old postcards. 2. The best way to master a foreign language is to learn the basics at home and then go to a country where this language is spoken, stay there for at least a couple of months and get as much practice as possible. 3. The next thing to be done is to find a good, well-paid job. 4. Our aim was to cheat him out of his money. 5. To say so means to demonstrate your complete lack of confidence. 6. His only wish is to get home as fast as possible.

c) The infinitive as object:

1. He asked to come with us./He asked us to take him along. 2. In the kindergarten children are taught to read and to count.

3. I am so glad to be able to help you. 4. We are so awfully sorry not to have warned you that we might not be able to come to your party. 5. The doctor advised the patient to go on a diet of fruit, vegetables and dairy products. 6. The child is afraid to speak English in your presence because he is afraid of making mistakes. 7. I've clean forgotten to buy a Christmas present for my mother-in-law. 8. Everybody promised not to miss classes again, but very few kept their promises. 9. Would you like to have a glass of Bloody Mary or do you prefer plain Scotch and soda? 10. Who has allowed you to let the cat in? 11. Aunt Polly instructed Jim to take her straight to his mistress.

d) The infinitive as attribute:

1. He was always the first to wake up in the morning. 2. We have nothing to do with all this. 3. This is a chance to take revenge on your old enemy/to get hold of the most gorgeous guy in town. 4. Benny has no friends to play with, poor boy. 5. He is not a man to be trusted. 6. She made an attempt to make it up with her boyfriend but failed. 7. Is there anybody to shut the bloody door? 8. He always finds something to do. 9. This is the information to convince my boss that I was right to refuse that offer. 10. He spoke of his wish to become as great a magician as David Copperfield and maybe even greater.

e) The infinitive as adverbial modifier of purpose:

1. He came immediately to stand/go bail for his son. 2. We'll stay after the lecture to ask the professor some questions. 3. They stopped to rest their horses. 4. Write down this rule so as not to forget it. 5. I've opened the door to let the dog in. 6. He stepped aside politely to let her pass. 7. To achieve success you must work hard. 10. The boy ran out to meet his grandmother.

f) The infinitive as adverbial modifier of result:

1. She was too frightened to tell the truth. 2. The article is too difficult to translate. 3. The fence is high enough to keep intruders out. 4. The baby is too restless to take him out for a walk. 5. The weather is warm enough to wear a hug-me-tight and sandals. 6. We are too busy to take another order. 7. She was grown-up enough to look after her little sister. 8. The night was too dark to make out the outlines of the ships riding at anchor in the harbour.

Ex. 93, p. 487

1. There weren't many children in the neighbourhood to play with. 2. He fell asleep with full determination to go and see for himself. 3. He is a man to be trusted. 4. We didn't know the way to the station, and there wasn't anyone to ask. 5. He was the first person to come to the bar and the last to leave it. 6. It isn't a thing to joke about. It's a serious matter. 7. He will always find something to laugh at. 8. They decided that it was a nice little town to live in quietly for a while. 9. He's not a man to be easily frightened. 10. There's nothing to discuss now. Everything is settled. 11. He was the first man to guess what George was driving at. 12. No doubt it was the best time to find them all at home. 13. A good housewife will always find something to do about the house. 14. The old general wanted nothing but a grandson to dandle on his knee.

Ex. 95, p. 487

1. This is a splendid opportunity/an excellent chance to make it up with them. 2. I've got no one to turn to for advice. 3. Here's a fresh rose to stick in/to pin to your hair. 4. It was an inconvenient time to have a break. 5. I doubt if there is anyone here to talk to about this matter. 6. I was given a text to translate without using a dictionary. 7. There's nothing to argue about. We are practically talking about one and the same thing. 8. He is just the right man to fill the vacancy. 9. Here's the key to open the desk drawer with. 10. To my mind the matter to be discussed at our meeting is very important. 11. I can't see the duster to rub the blackboard clean. 12. It's just the right book to read before going to sleep. 13. We are leaving tomorrow morning and we still have plenty to do. 14. He was the first to answer. 15. There was no time to lose, and Teleguin jumped out of the window onto the roof of the next house. 16. There's nothing to think over, everything is very simple. 17. Although he wanted to say something cheering, all he was able to do was (to) give a shy smile. 18. He realized with regret that there was nothing to be done.

Ex. 96, p. 488

1. to be missed; 2. to catch; 3. to work; 4. to avoid; 5. to be drawn; 6. not to forget; 7. not to be helped; 8. to find; 9. to see; 10. to forget; 11. to find; 12. to help

Translation

1. Я намеревался воспользоваться этим случаем, он был слишком хорош, чтобы упустить его. 2. Выйдя из здания почты, я обнаружил, что было уже слишком поздно, чтобы успеть на лондонский поезд/что уже не успею на лондонский поезд. 3. Было слишком жарко, чтобы работать, и мы решили сделать перерыв. 4. Диксон был достаточно умен, чтобы не говорить с Уэлчем на эту тему. 5. Майкл полагал, что Джонни слишком молод, чтобы вовлекать его в их религиозную общину. 6. Будучи женщиной в полном смысле слова, она даже в этот критический момент не забыла напудрить нос. 7. Ему ничем нельзя помочь. 8. Он повернулся к Маргарет и обнаружил, что она беседует с Кэрол Голдсмит. 9. Он слышал громкий стук в парадную дверь, открыл ее и увидел незнакомца в потрепанном плаще. 10. Ей нравилось быть доброй и раздавать обещания, которые она тотчас же забывала. 11. Он быстро прошел в ванную, а вернувшись, обнаружил, что Мэри сидит возле его кровати. 12. Жаль, что я недостаточно силен, чтобы помочь тебе, мой мальчик.

Ex. 97, p. 488

1. It was too dark to see anything before him. 2. You are experienced enough to know better. 3. He was too excited to utter a word. 4. He was too angry to speak to me. 5. He knows too few English words to make himself understood. 6. She knows English well enough to read Somerset Maugham in the original./She knows English so well as to be able to read Somerset Maugham in the original. 7. Mr. Burton was so cruel as to send a man to death. 8. The story "A Friend in Need" is too tragic to be merely ironical. 9. The man was too down and out to get a decent job. 10. The man was not strong enough to swim the distance. It was too late for anybody to save him.

Ex. 98, p. 489

1. He is clever enough to understand it. 2. The current was too strong for him to swim around the beacon. 3. The story was too gripping/absorbing not to read it to the end. 4. Her pronunciation was too correct to be natural. 5. He was so furious that one word would have been enough to drive him mad. 6. I've looked through two chapters to find only five suitable examples. 7. The next morning she woke up to find herself alone in the house. 8. After a

long travel he returned to realize that there is no place like home. 9. He walked around/round/about all the rooms to find only the cat in the kitchen. The flat was empty. 10. She opened the door of the study to see her father walking up and down/to and fro/back and forth in a rage. 11. From time to time he would wake up only to go back to sleep at once. 12. After a long absence she came back home to find that nothing had changed: they had not forgiven her. 13. He thought over the situation for the umpteenth time only to realize that there was no way out. 14. She opened the door to find that everybody had already gathered and was waiting for her.

Ex. 99, p. 489

1. Adverbial modifier of purpose. 2. *to know* is part of a compound verbal predicate of double orientation and *to worry about* is an attribute. 3. Part of a Complex Object. 4. Attribute. 5. *to let* is an object, and *come* is part of a Complex Object. 6. *come* and *get* are parts of compound verbal modal predicates. 7. Part of a Complex Object. 8. Subject. 9. An adverbial modifier of result. 10. *to take* is an object and *to help* is an adverbial modifier of result. 11. Subject. 12. An adverbial modifier of result. 13. Part of a compound verbal aspect predicate. 14. Attribute. 15. *to get* is an attribute, and *to study* is a predicative. 16. *get* is part of a compound verbal modal predicate and *to do* is an attribute. 17. Part of a compound verbal modal predicate. 18. *to stare* is an attribute, and *to concentrate* is an object. 19. Subject. 20. Attributes. 21. *water* and *talk* are parts of Complex Objects, and *to hear* is a subject.

Ex. 100, p. 490

1. She is pleasant to talk to. 2. The matter was too complicated to be discussed in an hour. 3. I am glad to have learnt the truth. 4. You had better not annoy him with your silly questions. 5. This question is too complicated for her to decide/settle it by herself. 6. He isn't the kind of person to expect any help from. 7. It would be better to persuade him to work than to force him. 8. We are very glad to have seen this performance. 9. The children seem to have forgotten about this sad event. 10. You should have warned me in advance. 11. I kept silent because I had nothing to say. 12. They promised me to help prepare for the party. 13. His phone number is easy to memorize. 14. This man must have been sitting here for about half an hour. Who could he be waiting for? 15. Do

you remember who was the first to enter the room? 16. He is hardly a/the man to give you the information that interests you. 17. We pretended not to have noticed his mistake so as not to embarrass him. 18. The most important thing is how to make her believe us and follow/listen to our advice.

Ex. 101, p. 490

1. The rule is not difficult to remember. 2. My grandfather's armchair is very comfortable to sit in. 3. She is kind and easy to deal with. 4. He is difficult to persuade. 5. This passage is not very easy to translate because it contains some idiomatic expressions. 6. The girl is pleasant to look at but not at all pleasant to talk to. 7. Their quarrel was unpleasant to watch. 8. His stories are always funny to listen to. 9. Uncle Jack's advice was useful to follow. 10. This question is not so very easy to answer.

Ex. 103, p. 491

Comments

1. me feel — Complex Object. 2. you to say — Complex Object. 3. my father leave — Complex Object. 4. his door open — Complex Object. 5. us sleep — Complex Object. 6. a chap spend — Complex Object. 7. it to be — Complex Object. 8. him to come back — Complex Object. 9. somebody touch — Complex Object. 10. it to be done — Complex Object. 11. She ... to notice — Complex Subject. 12. The number ... to be — Complex Subject. 13. He ... to be — Complex Subject. 14. Lady Franklin ... to expect — Complex Subject. 15. The boy ... to repeat — Complex Subject. 16. Professor Lee ... to join — Complex Subject. 17. He ... to say — Complex Subject; the door ... to be shut — Complex Object. 18. it ... to be looking back — Complex Subject. 19. He ... to have been — Complex Subject. 20. You ... to keep — Complex Subject.

Translation

1. Я чувствую себя как-то странно из-за таблеток, которые дал мне мой врач. 2. Я хочу, чтобы ты сказала себе: «Он умер смертью храбрых, служа своей стране, и мы должны им гордиться». 3. Я видел, как отец вышел из дома в то самое утро. 4. Уже теряя сознание, он услышал, как его дверь открылась и тотчас же закрылась опять. 5. Джордж был уверен, что благодаря свежему воздуху и физической нагрузке мы будем спать как убитые. 6. Никогда не видел, чтобы человек тратил

столько времени на изучение рентгеновских снимков/радиограмм. 7. Я думал, что это сигнал начинать. 8. Мы не ожидали, что он вернется так быстро, и теперь гадали, что стряслось. 9. Она почувствовала, как кто-то ласково коснулся ее рукой. 10. Я бы хотел, чтобы это было сделано как можно незаметнее, не привлекая внимания. 11. Она, похоже, не замечала его холодного тона. 12. Оказалось, что дом, адрес которого мне дали/к которому меня направили, стоит несколько на отшибе, задом к реке. 13. «Кажется, он спит, миледи», — сказал дворецкий. 14. Леди Фрэнклин, похоже, ожидала ответа. 15. Мальчика заставили повторить свой рассказ дважды. 16. Предполагалось, что профессор Ли присоединится к экспедиции в Северной Африке, но он заболел. 17. Было слышно, как он сказал, что будет дождь, и велел закрыть дверь на балкон. 18. Я разглядывал дом со смесью подозрения и любопытства, а он, в свою очередь, похоже, разглядывал меня. 19. Говорят, что в молодости он был моряком. 20. Ты ведь вряд ли составишь нам компанию, а, Джим?

Ex. 104, p. 492

1. He was made to consult a doctor. 2. You seem to be upset. What's the matter? 4. I've never seen Jane Buck dance. 5. I was asleep and didn't hear them leave. 6. Parents always want their children to grow up to be honest people. 7. I think it was unfair of you to do it. 8. Who allowed you to make free with/to use my things? 9. He felt his strength return(ing). 10. Nothing could make him change his decision. 11. This year winter is expected to be severe. 12. I accidentally heard you say the last sentence. 13. They are sure to get married. 14. I want all of us to meet once more. 15. She felt someone touch her on the shoulder. 16. She was closely watching the other gymnasts jump. 17. He is unlikely to recover by Monday. 18. Don't allow children to play with matches. 19. We turned out to know each other. 20. She grew pale and I felt her shudder.

Ex. 105, p. 492

1. I should be delighted to get acquainted with the captain of your team. 2. He was annoyed to learn that they hadn't chosen him as a player for the All-Union match. 3. I was sorry to have missed the beginning of the match. 4. We must wait for the referee to whistle, then we'll see the teams coming out. 5. They

wouldn't be surprised to receive an invitation to play in a tennis match with the fellows from our college. 6. You would be foolish to miss the chance. 7. I'm pleased to have been of some service to you. 8. She turned to me as if to ask me something. 9. We are happy to have won, it was a difficult match. 10. I was sorry to hear of their failure. 11. I'm sorry to have been of so little assistance. 12. He pressed his finger to his lips as if to warn her.

Ex. 106, p. 493

A. 1. Он придержал для нее дверь./Он придержал дверь, чтобы она могла войти. 2. Как мило с вашей стороны помнить мой голос! Я вас не побесякоил? 3. С вашей стороны было очень любезно приехать, но теперь вы должны уехать. 4. «Три недели и два дня, миледи», — ответил Ледбиттер. «Как мило с вашей стороны посчитать дни!» — сказала леди Фрэнклин. 5. «Как мило, что вы пришли», — сказал он, не вставая с кровати. 6. Думаю, лучше всего тебе будет увидеть его самой. 7. Сейчас слишком поздно, чтобы выпускать детей на улицу.

B. 1. Мне надо сообщить тебе что-то очень важное, настолько важное, что я и не знаю, как это сказать. 2. Я не вполне уверен, присоединяться мне к ним или нет. 3. Мы пока еще не решили, когда тронемся в путь. 4. Он колебался, не зная, что сказать дальше. 5. Я не знал, какую книгу выбрать. 6. Скажите мне, кого пригласить. 7. Вопрос в том, где это спрятать.

C. 1. И по правде говоря, я и сам рад, что у меня есть попутчик. 2. Откровенно говоря, ни один дом в городе не мог сравниться по популярности с их домом. 3. Он, конечно же, немного опоздает, и Энн станет ворчать. 4. Короче говоря, все закончилось к ее вящему удовольствию.

Ex. 107, p. 493

1. She held out the telegram for me to see it. 2. It's quite natural for you to think so. 3. The first thing for him to do is to ring them up. 4. Let us wait for them to settle this matter. 5. This is a problem for you to solve all by yourself. 6. I shall bring the article for you to read. 7. I gave an umbrella to the children for them not to get wet through. 8. I've put on weight. Now this dress is too tight for me to wear. 9. It is unbelievable for a man to go so far beyond his limit. 10. He spoke loudly for everyone to hear

him. 11. There is nothing for me to add. 12. It is very unusual for him to have said such a thing. 13. It's high time for you to know grammar well. 14. This is a boy for you to play with.

Ex. 108, p. 493
(possible variants)

1. Can you advise me what university to go to? 2. I can't make up my mind whether to refuse this offer or not. 3. She hesitated where to go for her holiday: to Italy or to France. 4. I am at a loss what to say. 5. The trouble is how to choose between the two. 6. Where to put up for the night is the first thing to decide. 7. His chief difficulty was how to tell his twin daughters apart. 8. I don't know what jewels to put on. 9. Show me how to fix it. 10. Nobody could tell him who to turn to for help.

Ex. 109, p. 494
(possible variants)

1. To cut a long story short, Scarlett realized that she loved Rhett when it was already too late. 2. Her grammar is not very good, to put it mildly. 3. My eyes water, my joints ache, and to crown (it) all most of my teeth need filling. 5. What he said is not quite true, to say the least of it. 6. It will be a lot of trouble, to say nothing of the expense. (Это причинит уйму хлопот, не говоря уже о расходах.) 7. To begin with, I've never seen the man and don't know him from Adam. 8. To judge by her appearance, she is still in her twenties.

Ex. 110, p. 494

1. You had better stay in today. You may catch a cold. 2. I often hear you speak in students' debates. 3. You have heard him say it yourself. 4. It would do you good to do more physical exercises. 5. He knew that he must be there but couldn't make himself come in. (He knew that his presence/attendance was a must/was necessary but couldn't make himself come in.) 6. She was heard to say that none of them could be trusted. 7. He must have read this novel quite recently. 8. She is unlikely to know what to say about it. 9. The difficulty is where to obtain this rare book. 10. I don't know him well enough to talk to him about it. 11. She doesn't like her door to be shut. 12. I'm glad to meet you. 13. I'm glad to have met you. 14. There was no one to ask, and we had to wait. 15. Why not go for a walk? The weather is wonderful.

16. They say he was seen to enter the house, but no one saw him leave it. 17. She seems to be practising (at) the piano all morning. 18. Ben was the first to speak. 19. They don't seem to have left yet. 20. I have a lot to talk to you about. 21. We didn't expect him to do it himself. 22. She is too shallow/light-minded to take it seriously. 23. It can't have been done in so short a time/in such a short time. 24. He isn't easy to please.

The Gerund

Ex. 111, p. 494

1. Рассказывать о себе — это как раз то, чего мы, современные авторы, очень не любим. 2. Он перестал писать, со всех ног бросился в ванную и начал торопливо умыться. Он уже опаздывал на две минуты. 3. Я знаю, что это глупо, но не могу не беспокоиться. 4. Мне не нравится, когда мне лгут — а это как раз то, что вы, по-моему, пытаетесь сейчас сделать. 5. Мне трудно решиться рассказать вам свою историю. 6. Услышав этот звук, Нэнс бросилась к двери, а Грэнд — к окну. 7. Он уехал, не заплатив по счету. 8. Вы не могли бы немного подождать в приемной? 9. Он отрицал, что открывал коробку./Он сказал, что не открывал коробку. 10. Когда я быстро пишу, у меня устает рука. 11. Я помню, что видел его/ее/эту вещь на столе. 12. Его обвинили в том, что он въехал в страну нелегально. 13. Мне не нравилось, что моя мать вмешивается в это дело. 14. Мальчик полночи писал письмо родным.

Ex. 112, p. 495

1. *Speaking* without *thinking* is *shouting* without aim. 2. Do you know what is peculiar about the English rule of *driving*? 3. I'm glad to say that the lady didn't keep us *waiting*. 4. I remember *being taken* to Paris when I was a very small child. 5. I strongly suspect Gerald of *knowing* about it beforehand, though he swears he didn't. 6. Excuse me for not *writing* more at the moment. 7. She never lost the power of *forming* quick decisions. 8. He had an air of *being* master of his fate, which was his chief attraction. 9. She denied *having seen* me at the concert though I'm sure I saw her in the stalls. 10. I want to thank her for *looking* after the children while I was out. 11. He passed to the front door and out without *seeing* us. 12. I enjoy *reading* poetry. 13. I don't

mind *staying* here for a little while. 14. Are you going to keep me *waiting* all day? 15. They reproached us for not *coming* to the party; they were waiting for us the whole evening. 16. He suspected her of *giving/having given* the police information about him while the workers were on strike. 17. I sat on the doorstep thinking over my chances of *escaping* from home. 18. There is very little hope of the work *being done* in time. The coat showed evident signs of *being worn/having been worn* on the preceding night. 20. *Avoiding* the use of the perfect Gerund is quite common if there is no fear of *misunderstanding*.

Ex. 113, p. 496

1. Newton, the famous scientist, was sometimes engaged *in working out* difficult problems. 2. "There is no question of *forgiving* you," he said quickly. 3. Of course, I should insist *on being paid* for my work. 4. I wonder if there's any use *in trying* to improve him. 5. We began to speak only when we were out *of hearing* of the old man. 6. I *insist on going* there at once. 7. We all suspected him *of learning* it before and *trying* to conceal it from us. 8. They were all busy *with unpacking* the books and *putting* them on the shelves. 9. *On hearing* the news she ran over to the telephone to inform Gerald at once. 10. But *in making* this request Mr. Dennant avoided *looking* in his face. 11. I spent the rest of the time in the hall of the Station Hotel *in writing* letters. 12. You can help me *by giving* a piece of good advice, you're old enough to know it better. 13. *After discussing* the plan we decided to consult Mike's eldest brother who in our eyes was an expert. 14. He hesitated a little *before opening* the door. He had a feeling that there was somebody waiting for him inside. 15. *On hearing* the sound of the door opened downstairs he tiptoed into the corridor and bent over the banister. 16. *On seeing* three little children dancing in the street to their own music he came up nearer to see them better. 17. Excuse me *for coming* late.

Ex. 114, p. 496

1—3. Subject. 4. *Seeing* is a subject and *believing* is a predicative. 5—6. Predicative. 7—9. Part of a compound verbal aspect predicate. 10. Part of a compound verbal modal predicate. 11—18. Object. 19—21. Attribute. 22, 24. Part of an adverbial modifier of manner. 23, 25. Part of an adverbial modifier of time.

Ex. 115, p. 497

1. Now I can boast *of having seen* Rome and London, Paris and Athens. 2. How did you like the English rule *of driving* on the left side of the road instead of the right? 3. I hate *being ill* and *staying* in bed. 4. We all kissed Mother *before going* to bed. 5. I'm not used *to receiving* Christmas presents. 6. At every school she went to she learned drawing, besides *being taught* by her father at home. 7. My wife and I look forward *to seeing* you and Rosa. 8. The children had to help *in sweeping* and *cleaning* the rooms and *washing up* after meals. 9. The doctor left three different medicines with instructions *on giving* them. 10. You can improve your pronunciation *by reading* aloud. 11. I went out for a while *after giving* the boy the prescribed capsules. 12. You can't act *without feeling*. 13. I dislike the idea *of spending* a holiday with hundreds of other people. 14. *On being asked* about it he said he knew nothing. 15. The silence was broken by the sound of a door *being locked*. 16. She walked a little *after leaving* her office. 17. I remember *going* to the British Museum one day.

Ex. 116, p. 497

1. Nelly suggested going to the History Museum. 2. This problem is worth discussing. 3. I remember seeing this very photograph in another magazine. 4. Although we only stayed in London for three days I greatly enjoyed doing/seeing the sights of this huge/enormous city. 5. She is afraid of staying alone with the children. She doesn't know what to do with them and how to entertain them. 6. Reading books on the history of England and of London in particular is a pleasant and useful/beneficial occupation for an intending/would-be teacher of English. 7. He avoids meeting me after our quarrel. 8. They couldn't keep from being late/couldn't help being late. Their train had been delayed by fog. 9. The doctor insists on all the children's/all the children being inoculated/vaccinated (on inoculating all the children). 10. Your overcoat needs brushing. 11. I remember seeing the letter on the table. 12. Excuse me for interfering, but I have got very important news for you. 13. I don't like borrowing money. It's rather unpleasant. 14. She prefers doing everything herself, without anybody's help. 15. He said it loudly without looking at anyone, and there was no telling who he was addressing. 16. There is no other way of getting there before sunset. 17. We spent a lot of time in writing invitation cards for the graduates of the

department to come to our party. 18. You can improve your pronunciation by listening to tapes and reading aloud. 19. On seeing roast turkey on a tray he said that it was the best treat imaginable. 20. After looking through all the photographs John kept smiling for a long time. 21. I am sorry to have to leave you so soon.

Ex. 117, p. 498

1. our taking her up to town and putting her under the best control — Object. 2. his breathing heavily — Subject; running up two flights of stairs — Object. 3. on your accepting the proper professional fee — Object. 4. by the noise of the outer door being opened — Object. 5. your standing down at the door alone — Object. 6. of the children staying there alone — Attribute. 7. of his being a humorous writer — Object. 8. your being so indifferent — Subject. 9. before your leaving — Adverbial modifier of time. 10. his accepting their proposal quite readily — Predicative. 11. about his favourite cake getting spoiled — Object. 12. without my prompting him — Adverbial modifier of condition. 13. of your telling me this — Object. 14. his having failed at the entrance examination — Subject. 15. on my coming to keep him company — Object.

Ex. 119, p. 498

1. *being* is a gerund. 2. *goings out* and *comings in* are verbal nouns. 3. *going back* is a gerund. 4. *waiting* is a gerund. 5. *hammering* is a verbal noun. 6. *tightening* is a verbal noun. 7. *reading* and *being exploited* are gerunds. 8. *hearing* is a verbal noun. 9. *looking back* is a gerund. 10. *cunning* is a noun. 11. *going in for* is a gerund. 12. *rapping* is a verbal noun. 13. *tidying* is a gerund. 14. *writing* is a verbal noun. 15. *waiting* is a gerund. 14. *writing* is a verbal noun. 15. *waiting* is a gerund. 16. *meeting* is a gerund. 17. *doing* is a gerund. 18. *splashing*, *stirring* and *shaking* are verbal nouns. 19. *talking* is a gerund. 20. *comings* and *goings* are verbal nouns.

Ex. 120, p. 499

1. I don't like seeing people off. I prefer being seen off myself. 2. You shouldn't have insisted on being told the truth. 3. His coming makes all the difference. 4. I remember putting the money into the bag. 5. I can't afford buying such expensive things. 6. Do

you mind his/him calling on you today? 7. She continued/went on/kept talking without paying attention to what we were saying. 8. He was angry at us for having bothered him. 9. The idea of telling her everything frankly/straightforwardly scared him. 10. We wanted to see her off, but she insisted on going alone. 11. I don't remember his ever asking me to do it. 12. Instead of thinking the matter over properly she refused outright. 13. What prevented you from coming/going with us? 14. On hearing a faraway cry he stopped and strained his ears. 15. On realizing her mistake she burst out/burst into laughing. 16. She never tired of talking about her children. She was so proud of them! 17. She let me know that she had seen me by slightly nodding her head.

Ex. 121, p. 500

1. I remember Mother reprimanding me when I spoiled her favourite fish-cake. 2. We recommended starting work at once. 3. Thank you for reminding me. 4. Nick suggested dining at a restaurant to celebrate this little event. 5. He doesn't like your interfering. 6. He prevents me from helping him/my helping him. 7. Nobody knew about their/them agreeing to take part in the expedition. 8. I insist on everything being said in plain words to avoid any misunderstanding. 9. She dislikes the children prompting one another and always gets very angry. 10. He wrote he would stay in Paris another week and didn't give any reasons for having to do so. 11. I can't recollect their/them ever inviting me to stay a weekend with them. 12. He was afraid of the news causing excitement among the girls. 13. She disliked his/him being so stubborn and never listening to her reasons. 14. Nell denies him/his being a bore. 15. I prefer making use of tape-recording before reading the text. 16. Nobody objects to Peter/Peter's living with us. 17. We decided on joining them in Glasgow.

Ex. 123, p. 501

1. I remember being ill at the time. 2. She kept silent because she was afraid of hurting him if she told the whole truth/she was afraid that telling the whole truth might offend him. 3. One can't get used to being insulted. 4. On seeing me the child gave a cheerful smile/smiled happily. 5. The mother couldn't help worrying/couldn't keep from worrying because it was high time the children were back. 6. She tore the letter to pieces/bits/shreds without

reading it. 7. This matter is worth discussing. 8. He was fined for crossing the street in a wrong place. 9. After what had happened she avoided meeting him. 10. She is considering/thinking about quitting her job and moving to the country. 11. I liked the idea of spending the weekend in the country. 12. Would you mind my/me dropping in tonight? 13. I am used to getting up early because classes in college begin at 7:30. 14. You must return books to the library in time without being reminded. 15. It's no use/There is no use in trying to obtain tickets for this performance. 16. We enjoyed listening to him telling about his adventures. 17. On seeing me coming they broke off/stopped talking. 18. She denied having seen us there. 19. I can't afford buying such an expensive watch. 20. She seemed very surprised at seeing me.

The Participles

Ex. 124, p. 501

1. *dying* is an attribute. 2. *watching* is part of an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances. 3. *being* is part of an adverbial modifier of reason. 4. *laughing* is an attribute. 5. *promising* is part of an attribute. 6. *carrying* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner. 7. *looking* is part of an attribute. 8. *lying* is an adverbial modifier of time. 9. *having eaten* is an adverbial modifier of reason. 10. *driving* is part of an adverbial modifier of time. 11. *eating* is part of an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances. 12. *eating* and *drinking* are part of an adverbial modifier of time. 13. *trying* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner. 14. *saying* is an attribute. 15. *holding* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner; *thinking* is an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances. 16. *living* is part of an attribute. 17. *trying* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner. 18. *bending* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner.

Ex. 125, p. 502

1. *Looking* out of the window, she saw there was a man *working* in the garden. 2. That night, *going* up to his room Shelton thought of his unpleasant duty. 3. *Descending* to the hall, he came on Mr. Dennant *crossing* to his study, with a handful of official-looking papers. 4. The carriage was almost full, and *putting* his bag up in the rack, he took his seat. 5. *Knowing* that she couldn't trust Jim, she sent Peter instead. 6. *Having done* all that was

required, he was the last to leave the office. 7. *Having returned/returning* home in the afternoon, she became conscious of her mistake. 8. He couldn't join his friends *being* still busy in the laboratory. 9. *Having finished* his work, he seemed more pleased than usual. 10. *Stepping* inside, he found himself in what had once been a sort of office. 11. He left the room again, *closing* the door behind him with a bang. 12. I spent about ten minutes *turning* over the sixteen pages of "The Times" before I found the chief news and articles. 13. *Turning* to the main street, he ran into Donald and Mary *returning* from school. 14. *Having returned* from the expedition, he wrote a book about Central Africa. 15. *Getting* out of bed, she ran to the window and drew the curtain aside. 16. *Being confused* by his joke, she blushed. 17. *Having been informed/being informed* of their arrival the day before, he was better prepared to meet them than anyone of us. 18. Sir Henry paused and then said, *glancing* down at his watch, "Edward's arriving by the 12.15."

Ex. 126, p. 503

1. Look out/Be careful when crossing the street. 2. Having written the composition, she began doing another assignment. 3. Students not giving enough attention to grammar will never master English. 4. We got in the garden, talking about our cruise along the Volga. 5. Running down the stairs, she stopped for a moment, as if hesitating, which way to go. 6. Having explained everything in detail, he calmly took his seat. 7. Finding herself alone in the street, she immediately felt sorry about what had happened. 8. Picking up her son, Eliza ran. 9. The young man standing by the window looked at me closely. 10. Having seen their son off, they were slowly walking back from the railway station. 11. East End theatres often stage/produce/put on plays touching upon/dealing with various contemporary problems. 12. A drowning man grasps at a straw. 13. Mother had to get up and down a good deal, changing the plates and fetching dishes. 14. Noticing me, she stopped.

Ex. 127, p. 503

1. the visitor walking backwards and forwards; him talking; 2. Shelton standing; 3. his irritation mounting; 4. Dora reading; 5. them going; 6. her walking; 7. Charles sitting; 8. herself wondering; 9. her face looking; 10. him handing; 11. the bridge

shaking; 12. somebody opening; 13. groups walking; 14. moisture shining; 15. the doors being opened.

Translation

1. Я слышал, как посетитель беспокойно ходит взад и вперед. И еще слышал, как он сам с собой разговаривает. 2. Она обернулась и увидела, что там, внизу, стоит Шелтон. 3. Он чувствовал, как в нем закипает раздражение. 4. Он нашел Дору в спальне; она читала роман. 5. Они, потешаясь, смотрели, как те уходят. 6. Мы слышали, как она идет по лестнице, находящейся рядом с подвалом. 7. В эту минуту я заметил Чарльза, сидевшего чуть поодаль в вестибюле. 8. Впервые она поймала себя на мыслях о том, что с ним стало. 9. Луна полностью вышла из-за туч, и он поразился, внезапно увидев ее обращенное к нему лицо. 10. Вы всегда можете увидеть, как он во время чаепития разносит хлеб и масло. 11. Он почувствовал, как у него под ногами шатается мост. 12. Затем в глубоком безмолвии ночи он услышал, как кто-то тихонько открывает дверь. 13. Он смотрел на стайки идущих парами под ручку девушек. 14. Сомс поднял руку ко лбу, и она вдруг заметила, что лоб его блестит от испарины. 15. Изучая эти бумаги, я услышал, как кто-то открывает двери, ведущие в главный коридор.

Ex. 128, p. 504

1. A moment later they heard her bedroom door *shut* with a bang. 2. I've never heard your canary *singing*. Is there anything the matter with the bird? 3. Would you like me *to make* you lunch, or have you had some? 4. I want you *to explain* the disappointment we had this morning. 5. She watched him *passing* the gate and *walking* down the street. 6. Through the chink in the shutters she watched Emma *picking* cherries in the orchard. 7. The captain said something which made them *laugh*, he didn't hear what it was. 8. They had their own pattern of life and expected me *to fit* in. 9. You can see him *working* in his little garden every day. 10. She had never heard philosophy *passing/pass* those lips before. 11. I saw him *put* his suitcase right here. 12. During that moment Miss Pembroke told a lie, and made Rickie *believe* it was the truth. 13. Together they watched the old oak *dropping* its leaves. 14. He found them *sitting* together and *talking* peacefully. They didn't notice him *approaching*. 15. He felt the water

reaching/reach his knees. 16. She felt her voice *trembling* and tried to control herself. 17. We saw him *open/opening* the envelope and *read/reading* something hastily. 18. I saw him *unfolding* the telegram slowly and hesitatingly as though he expected it *to contain* some bad news. 19. He heard the young people *singing* and *shouting* from the opposite bank. 20. She watched him *working* for a long time.

Ex. 129, p. 504

3. candle in hand; 7. his eyes on Dixon; 8. her hands by her sides, the sheet up to her chin; 9. the strain of indecision over; 10. his shilling in his pocket; 12. dinner over.

1. Она опустилаcя на стул и сидела, нервно сжимая и разжимая (свои) тонкие пальцы. 2. После того как дверь открылась и Бантер достал электрический фонарик, они вошли в широкий коридор с каменными стенами. 3. Держа в руке свечу, миссис Бэдл обошла комнату, показывая все ее красоты. 4. «Ты не уважаешь меня», — дрожащим голосом сказала Дора. 5. Они вместе побежали по дороге; на бегу Мор по-прежнему продолжал крепко держать ее под руку. 6. Мимо шли люди, натянув шапки на уши и подняв воротники. 7. Прежде чем двинуться с места, Берtrand пристально посмотрел на Диксона и сказал: «Ведь это совершенно ясно, не так ли?» 8. Констанция, укрытая до подбородка простыней, лежала как статуя; руки ее были вытянуты вдоль тела, а неподвижный взгляд устремлен в потолок. 9. Теперь, когда он наконец решился и напряжение спало, он чувствовал себя как выздоравливающий после болезни. 10. Четыре секунды спустя Диксон выходил из гостиницы на залитую солнцем улицу, и в кармане у него лежал заработанный шиллинг. 11. В другой раз, когда мы шли по Ферн-Бэй, возвращаясь с долгой экскурсии, и всем нам хотелось пить, потому что день был жаркий, она предложила зайти в «Дельфин» и выпить по кружке пива. 12. После обеда Кэрри зашла в ванную, где ей никто не мог помешать, и написала коротенькую записку. 13. После того как раненому ампутировали ногу, не осталось сомнений, что он скоро поправится. 14. Голоса затихли вдаль, и Джеймс остался один; уши его стояли торчком, как у зайца, а сердце сжимал страх.

Ex. 130, p. 505

1. She heard her father walking up and down the terrace. 2. Strictly speaking, it isn't quite what I had in mind. 3. Tom saw something moving quickly in the water. 4. Coming home he saw that he was unwelcome/that he hadn't been expected. 5. The cold rays of the setting sun lit up the tops of the trees. 6. He noticed that he was being followed and realizing that decided to change his route. 7. One could hear music playing somewhere in the distance. 8. Judging by the tenderness with which she is looking at him, she likes him. 9. Seeing that there were storm clouds in the sky, we decided to put off the walk. 10. Reaching the middle of the bridge, I felt it shaking. 11. One could hear the sick man moaning with pain. 12. Hearing footsteps on the deserted street, she became apprehensive. 13. Trying to conceal her embarrassment, she began telling something hastily to her companion. 14. Going out into the garden, I saw that the children were playing peacefully as though nothing had happened. 15. I watched him reading the letter attentively. 16. Generally speaking, I have no time to listen to her absurd stories.

Ex. 131, p. 506

1. We were tired and thirsty, having been on the road since eight o'clock in the morning, and it was a hot day. 2. One day towards evening when sitting in front of their cottages, the old people caught sight of a young girl with a bundle in her hand. 3. The lady was waiting for her sister arriving by the 7.30 train. 4. I hailed the first taxi passing by and reached the station at ten minutes to three. 5. One morning, looking out of the window, Johnny saw in his neighbour's orchard a great number of fine red apples which had fallen from the trees. 6. "Villain!" cried he, running down to him. 7. "Oh, sir," said the poor boy trembling with fear, "it isn't my fault." 8. "May I come in?" she said pushing the door a little wider open. 9. "I'm late," she remarked, sitting down and drawing off her gloves. 10. Here and there were signs that the flower-beds had been trampled upon by excited villagers trying to reach the windows. 11. Not knowing the way to the station he often stopped to ask people who were passing by. 12. He looked like an African savage being shown a simple conjuring trick. 13. The old woman told me with pride that the healthy-looking child playing beside us was her grandson. 14. She returned presently bringing a

tray with a jug of milk. 15. The path leading through the coppice soon got lost in the high grass.

Ex. 132, p. 506

1. A middle-aged woman, who was wearing a print apron, stood at the door of the cottage. 2. She looked down at the floor as though she saw something there. 3. When Jacob arrived at the house in Malta Street on a sunny afternoon, he found that it had been deserted. 4. A snake that is sleeping in the grass will bite if anyone treads upon it. 5. When she was seven, she often wore her favourite brown velvet frock barely reaching the knees of her thin legs. 6. Suddenly, as he was watching the fear she was trying to hide, he believed her story. 7. The golden light that was still lying in sheets upon the water dazzled Nan for a moment. 8. I felt a bitter envy towards the two small boys who were walking along the path with their mother at that moment. 9. It's an old face for twenty-five, Jan thought, as she watched the wrinkles that fanned out from eyes to temples. 10. As Jim was not sure of her real intentions, he merely looked at her and paused for a moment. 11. After he had satisfied himself that each guest had a plate of food and a glass of water, he was anxious to make conversation. 12. When he returned home late at night, he found everybody in bed. 13. As soon as he reached the top of the hill, my companion stopped. 14. After he had filled his pockets with apples, the boy was about to run away when he saw the owner of the garden with a stick in his hand. 15. The letter that began with "Dear sir" was not signed. 16. After I had addressed and sealed the parcel, I went out at once to the Main Post Office.

Ex. 133, p. 507

1. It was some time before the man working in the garden noticed me. 2. The tall man turned out to be an engineer who had worked at this factory a few years before. 3. The boy who had been selling newspapers was no longer to be seen. 4. The girl selling flowers nearby reminded me of Eliza Doolittle. Evidently I was inclined to see in England what I had once read about it. 5. The villagers who had seen the girl that morning said that she had been walking towards the far end of the village where the river was. 6. All those who have read this writer's humorous stories can't help admiring them/can't keep from admiring them/can't help but admire them. 7. The students who have read this

essay say that it's difficult to translate. 8. My friend who has travelled to the Panama Canal tells a lot of interesting things about this voyage. 9. The tourists who visited The Fine Arts Museum at the same time as me were voicing their admiration. 10. At last the young man that had been reading a magazine looked up at me/raised his head and looked at me. 11. The man that had been asking the way to Waterloo Bridge suddenly disappeared. 12. The face of the young worker asking me where I had come from seemed familiar. I had definitely seen him somewhere before. 13. He noticed that the elderly gentleman staring at him was giving him mysterious signs. 14. The man who had brought a letter from Arthur wanted to talk to her in private. 15. They often thought about their friends working in the Far East. 16. Our friends who worked in the Far East have returned to Moscow. 17. Mickey, translating a difficult article, didn't even look up at me. 18. Micky, who has translated this article, says that we must read it in the original.

Ex. 134, p. 508

1. *well-known* is a predicative. 2. *separated* is an attribute. 3. *frightened* is an attribute. 4. *known* is a predicative. 5. *frightened* is a predicative. 6. *thrust* is part of an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances. 7. *situated* is an attribute. 8. *exhausted* is part of an adverbial modifier of reason. 9. *unnoticed* is an adverbial modifier of manner. 10. *fallen* is an attribute. 11. *seen* is part of an adverbial modifier of time (*when seen*) or condition (*if seen*). 12. *accompanied* is part of an adverbial modifier of manner. 13. *made* is part of an attribute. 14. *tired* is a predicative. 15. *locked* is part of an adverbial modifier of time. 16. *shut* is part of an adverbial modifier of attending circumstances. 17. *looked at* is part of an adverbial modifier of condition.

Ex. 135, p. 508

1. By a residential college we mean a college with a hostel usually situated on the same grounds as the principal building. 2. The slogan made by Mike's brother attracted everybody's attention. 3. The child left alone in the large room began to scream. 4. I have a letter for you received two days ago. 5. They were all pleased with the results achieved by the end of the month. 6. His words uttered in an undertone, reached my ears. 7. He said

that the book chosen by me belonged to his grandfather. 8. I asked the librarian to show me the magazines sent from the German Democratic Republic. 9. Everybody felt that in the farewell dinner there was sadness mingled with festivity. 10. We were all looking at his smiling face framed in the window of the railway-carriage. 11. There was another pause broken by a fit of laughing of one of the old men sitting in the first row. 12. There lay a loaf of brown bread divided into two halves. 13. The English people love their green hedges covered with leaf and flower in summer, and a blaze of gold and red in autumn. 14. From his essay we learn about various goods produced in Birmingham and the adjoining manufacturing towns. 15. In the South of England we find fertile valleys divided by numerous hedges. 16. Tennis is one of the most popular games in England played all the year round. 20. They say that in their college as well as in ours, the students have lots of exams held at the end of each term.

Ex. 136, p. 509

An illustrated magazine; a magazine illustrated by a famous artist; broken glass; the glass broken the day before; a broken pencil; a branch broken by the wind; excited voices; the children excited by the incident; the lost key; the key lost yesterday; (the) newspapers received from London; a letter written in an unfamiliar hand; a closed door; a door locked on the inside; a girl invited to the party; a fallen tree; a book fallen from the table; stolen documents; the documents stolen from the secretary; a finished composition; a composition finished in haste; a/the boy frightened by a/the dog; a highly developed industrial country.

Ex. 137, p. 510

1. his luggage sent; 2. your carpets cleaned; 3. your watch repaired; 4. it done; 5. our photos taken; 6. the rooms dusted; 7. my nails polished; 8. a new dress made; 9. the ceiling whitewashed; 10. the door locked; 11. the table cleared; the bread collected; 12. his name called.

Translation

1. Он распорядился, чтобы его багаж отвезли на вокзал.
2. Как часто вы отдаете ковры в чистку? 3. Вам отремонтировали часы? 4. Я хочу, чтобы это было сделано как можно скорее. 5. Мы решили сфотографироваться после того, как сда-

дим последний экзамен. 6. Сделай так, чтобы к тому времени, когда они приедут, комнаты проветрили и вытерли в них пыль. 7. Мне еще не сделали маникюр. 8. Мне шьют новое платье. 9. Он считал, что нужно нанять маляра, чтобы побелить потолок. 10. Они обнаружили, что дверь заперта. 11. Миссис Муни наблюдала за тем, как убирают стол и собирают недоеденный хлеб. 12. Он услышал, как кто-то окликнул его сзади.

REVISION EXERCISES ON THE VERBALS

Ex. 138, p. 510

1. Subject. 2—6. Predicative. 7—10. Part of a compound verbal aspect predicate. 11—13. Part of a compound verbal modal predicate. 14—17. Object. 18. Attribute. 19. *to find* is part of a compound verbal modal predicate and *to ask* is an attribute. 20—22. Attribute. 23. Adverbial modifier of purpose. 24—25. Adverbial modifier of result.

Translation

1. Здоровая жизнь за городом пошла им на пользу. 2. Для него было огромным счастьем узнать/Он почувствовал себя совершенно счастливым, когда узнал, что ее взгляды полностью совпадают с его. 3. Для него было истинным удовольствием/радостью доставлять радость/удовольствие другим. 4. Она не привыкла приказывать: вместо этого жизнь приучила ее спрашивать позволения. 5. Его самым заветным желанием было иметь сына. 6. Первым делом он пошел к портному, которого порекомендовал ему Гловер. 7. Возмущенный предстоящим визитом Маргарет, он начал обдумывать, как ее примет. 8. Вежливо прощаясь, вся компания начала медленно перемещаться к двери. 9. Поезд начал замедлять скорость/притормаживать. «О, вот мы и в Оксфорде», — сказал он. 10. Мы часенько играли в саду за домом. 11. Теперь ты можешь делать все, что (за)хочешь/что заблагорассудится. 12. Но ей пришлось опять обернуться; приближался ее отец. 13. Послушай, Гилберт, мне надо с тобой серьезно поговорить. 14. Диксон попытался подавить раздражение. 15. Он попросил нас не двигаться с места. 16. Он научил сына плавать. 17. Мэри предупредила нас, чтобы мы не опаздывали. 18. Мое милое дитя, такие вещи не могут быть предметом для шуток. 19. «Как же

мне найти этот дом? — подумал он. — Ведь спросить-то неко-го». 20. Именно это и нужно делать. 21. Мне нужна ручка, чтобы (было чем) писать. 22. «Я не хочу есть», — сказала Фелисити. 23. А Уильямс уехал в Лондон, чтобы начать новую жизнь. 24. Он открыл глаза слишком поздно и не увидел, как в коридоре ненадолго зажегся свет/как в спальню на мгновение проник и тут же погас луч света. 25. Жаль, что я недостаточно молод, чтобы помочь тебе.

Ex. 140, p. 511

1. He was so young, so gay, he laughed so merrily at other people's jokes that no one could help liking him. 2. Yalta is a nice town to live in. 3. He was on the point of quarrelling with her. 4. I want you to help me (to) pack this suitcase. 5. I should love to go to the party with you; I hate going/to go out alone. 6. Don't forget to put the book in the right place. 7. I forgot putting the book on the top shelf and spent half an hour or so on looking for it. 8. She told me how to make clothes last longer. 9. Mother says she often has occasion to complain of him/his coming late. 10. In doing the exercise you should carefully study the examples. 11. You must encourage him to start taking more exercise. 12. Bob was greatly ashamed of having been beaten in class by a smaller boy. 13. I looked around me, but there was no chair to sit on. 14. We heard him come back today. 15. She couldn't bear the thought of him/his staying alone. 16. Are you going to keep me waiting all day? 17. He pushed the door with his toe putting the suitcases down. 18. I should have gone to fetch the doctor instead of remaining where I was. 19. Oh, Robert, dearest, it's not a thing to joke about. I've so loved being with you. I'll miss you more than anyone. 20. His first impulse was to turn back, but he suppressed it and walked in boldly. 21. "I'm sorry, Margaret," he said, "I'm too old to start playing hide-and-seek with schoolgirls."

Ex. 141, p. 512

1. Do you prefer to cook/cooking yourself or to have/having lunch at the University canteen/cafeteria? 2. A fast recovery is impossible (It's impossible to recover fast/You can't get well quickly) without taking the medicine regularly. 3. I advise you to stop worrying about the child. He is already out of danger. 4. Everybody liked the idea of celebrating John's birthday in the country. 5. We decided to take a walk before going to bed. 6. The

boy was afraid of coming home in such a mess. It was clear that he deserved punishment/to be punished. 7. She was not used to getting presents and was surprised to see/at seeing magnificent roses on the table. 8. You shouldn't have insisted on being told about it. 9. This alone was enough to make it worthwhile coming back home. 10. We couldn't help smiling/keep from smiling/resist smiling at the child's serious air. 11. Besides being a first-class actor he is also an experienced director. 12. I don't remember him/his ever wishing me a happy birthday. 13. Why did you let the patient go without testing/taking his blood pressure? 14. I intend taking/to take part in the University chess competition. 15. My companion/fellow-passenger thanked me for looking after her luggage. 16. I am keen on swimming/I like swimming very much/I am very fond of swimming and never miss a chance of having/taking a dip. 17. After the unpleasant scene she avoided being seen in public. 18. Would you mind me/my putting another piece of the pie on your plate? 19. We couldn't even dream of obtaining tickets for/of attending the first night of this performance.

Ex. 142, p. 512

1. Noun. 2. *stooping* is a gerund and *dancing* is a participle. 3. Participle. 4. Gerund. 5—8. Participles. 9. Gerund. 10. Participle. 11. *remarking* is a participle and *leaving* is a gerund. 12. *depending* and *eating* are participles and *standing* is a noun. 13—14. Nouns. 15. Gerund. 16. Noun.

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Предисловие	3
Essential Course	4
Unit One	4
Unit Two	20
Unit Three	31
Unit Four	40
Unit Five	50
Unit Six	59
Unit Seven	73
Unit Eight	89
Unit Nine	102
Grammar Exercises	115
The indicative Mood	115
The Subjunctive Mood and The Conditional Mood	128
Modal Verbs	138
Non-Finite Forms of the Verb	168